https://theses.gla.ac.uk/

Theses Digitisation:
https://www.gla.ac.uk/mygla/glasgow/research/enlighten/theses/digitisation/
This is a digitised version of the original print thesis.

Copyright and moral rights for this work are retained by the author
A copy can be downloaded for personal non-commercial research or study, without prior permission or charge
This work cannot be reproduced or quoted extensively from without first obtaining permission in writing from the author
The content must not be changed in any way or sold commercially in any format or medium without the formal permission of the author
When referring to this work, full bibliographic details including the author, title, awarding institution and date of the thesis must be given
CHROMOSOMAL DNA VARIATION IN *BORDETELLA* SPECIES.

Antonia F. Leigh

Presented for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy
in the Faculty of Science, University of Glasgow.

Department of Microbiology September 1993
DEDICATION

I would like to dedicate this thesis to my family and friends for their support and in particular to my mother for her continued inspiration.
DECLARATION

This is the original work of the author

Antonia F. Leigh.
ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

I would like to thank my supervisors Drs John Coote and Roger Parton, Department of Microbiology, Glasgow University, and Dr Clive Duggleby, Division of Biotechnology, PHLS CAMR, Porton Down, for their constant support throughout this study. I would also like to thank Professors Freer and Wardlaw, Glasgow University, and Professor Atkinson, PHLS CAMR, for providing facilities to work in their departments. Special thanks are due to Roy Hartwell and Kenny Fantom for the synthesis of oligonucleotides. In addition I would like to thank all those I have met whilst at Glasgow University and PHLS CAMR for their advice and encouragement.
CHAPTER 1. GENERAL INTRODUCTION.

1.1. The Genus *Bordetella*. 1

1.2. Pertussis-The Disease. 3

1.3. Growth of the Bordetellae. 4

1.4. Virulence Factors of *B. pertussis*. 4

1.4.1. Pertussis toxin. 6

1.4.2. Filamentous haemagglutinin. 8

1.4.3. Agglutinogens. 10

1.4.4. Outer-membrane proteins. 13

1.4.5. Lipopolysaccharide endotoxin. 13

1.4.6. Adenylate cyclase toxin and haemolysin. 14

1.4.7. Dermonecrotic toxin. 15

1.4.8. Tracheal cytotoxin. 16

1.5. Flagella in *Bordetella* and Other Organisms. 16

1.6. Pertussis Vaccine. 18
1.7. Variation in Expression of Virulence Factors in *B. pertussis.*

1.7.1. Serotype variation. 21
1.7.2. Antigenic modulation. 21
1.7.3. Phase variation in *B. pertussis.* 22
1.7.4. Modulation and phase variation *in vivo.* 23
1.7.5. Model for modulation and phase variation in *Bordetella.* 24

1.8. Further Models for Variation in *Bordetella.* 28
1.8.1. DNA methylation. 28
1.8.2. Repeat DNA and insertion sequences. 30
1.8.3. Invertible DNA. 34

1.9. DNA Inversion In Other Bacteria. 34
1.9.1. The DNA invertase, Din, family. 34
   a. Hin DNA inversion in *S. typhimurium.* 36
   b. Gin DNA inversion in bacteriophage Mu. 38
   c. Cin DNA inversion in bacteriophage P1. 39
   d. Pin DNA inversion in *E. coli.* 39
1.9.2. DNA inversions proposed to be part of the Din family. 40
   a. Min DNA inversion in *E.coli 15T* 40
   b. Din DNA inversion in *Shigella.* 40
   c. DNA inversion in *Moraxella bovis.* 40
   d. Bin DNA inversion in *S. aureus.* 41
1.9.3. Transposons. 41

1.10. Aims of research. 42

vii
### CHAPTER 2. MATERIALS AND METHODS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2.1. Sources of Materials and Chemicals.</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2. Media Preparation.</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3. Buffers and Solutions for DNA Techniques.</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4. Bacterial Strains and Recombinant DNA Vectors.</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4.1. <em>Bordetella</em> strains.</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4.2. Other bacteria.</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4.3. Cosmid, plasmid and phage vectors.</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5. Media and Growth of Bacteria.</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.6. Microbiological Techniques.</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.6.1. Determination of phase/mode of <em>Bordetella</em>.</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a. Growth on selective agar.</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. Haemolysin assay.</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. Haemagglutination.</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d. Motility.</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.6.2. Transformation of <em>E. coli</em>.</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a. Preparation of competent cells.</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. Transformation/transfection.</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.7. DNA Manipulation Techniques.</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.7.1. Chromosomal DNA preparation.</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.7.2. Large-scale cosmid/plasmid DNA isolation from <em>E. coli</em>.</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.7.3. Phenol purification of plasmid DNA.</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.7.4. Ethanol precipitation of DNA.</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.7.5. DNA concentration and purity.</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.7.6. Digestion of DNA with restriction endonucleases.</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.7.7. Size markers for DNA electrophoresis.</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.7.8. Agarose gel electrophoresis. 63
2.7.9. Purification of DNA from agarose. 64
2.7.10. Subcloning. 64
2.7.11. Ligation. 65
2.7.12. Southern blotting. 65
   a. Alkaline Southern blotting with Zeta-Probe nylon membrane. 65
   b. High salt Southern blotting with Hybond-N nylon membrane. 67
2.7.13. Radiolabelling of size markers for Southern blots. 67
2.7.14. Amplification of gene probes by the polymerase chain reaction (PCR). 68
2.7.15. Synthesis of oligonucleotides. 69
2.7.16. Preparation of radioactively-labelled probes. 69
   a. Random hexanucleotide labelling of gene probes. 69
   b. Radiolabelling of oligonucleotide probes. 71
2.7.17. Hybridisation conditions. 71
   a. Low stringency hybridisation with Zeta-Probe membrane. 71
   b. Hybond-N membrane hybridisation. 72
   c. Oligonucleotide hybridisation. 72
2.7.18. Autoradiography. 73
2.7.19. Stripping probe from membranes for membrane reuse. 73
2.7.20. DNA sequencing. 73
   a. Subcloning of DNA into M13 mp18 and mp19. 74
   b. Preparation of template DNA. 75
c. Annealing of template with primer and sequencing reactions. 75
d. Plasmid sequencing. 76
e. Denaturing polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis. 77
f. Loading and running of sequencing gels. 77
g. Analysis and editing of sequence data. 78

CHAPTER 3. CHARACTERISATION OF A *B. PERTUSSIS* DNA FRAGMENT PREVIOUSLY PROPOSED AS HOMOLOGOUS TO *SALMONELLA TYPHIMURIUM* HIN INVERTASE DNA. 78

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3.1</td>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2</td>
<td>Restriction enzyme digestion of <em>B. pertussis</em> cosmid clone, p16, to show the presence of a 0.58 kb <em>BscI</em> DNA fragment.</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3</td>
<td>Subcloning the 0.58 kb <em>BscI</em> fragment into the plasmid pIC20H.</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4</td>
<td>Analysis of <em>B. pertussis</em> chromosomal DNA and clone p16 to obtain a larger fragment containing the 0.58 kb <em>BscI</em> fragment.</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>Sequencing of the 0.58 kb <em>BscI</em> DNA fragment subcloned in pIC20H.</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.6</td>
<td>Subcloning the 0.58 kb <em>BscI</em> fragment into the bacteriophage M13mp18 and mp19.</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.7</td>
<td>DNA sequence of the 0.58 kb <em>BscI</em> DNA fragment.</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.8</td>
<td>Southern hybridisation of <em>Bordetella</em> DNA and pKK1001B with the 0.58 kb fragment DNA probe.</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.9</td>
<td>Discussion.</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER 4. IDENTIFICATION OF *BORDETELLA* DNA FRAGMENTS WHICH HYBRIDISE TO HIN DNA AND DNA INVERTASE TARGET SEQUENCES.

4.1. Introduction. 90

4.2. Transformation of pKK1001B and p16 into a *dam* + *E. coli* strain. 91

4.3. Transformation of pKK1001B and p16 into a *dam* - *E. coli* strain. 91

4.4. Hybridisation of ClaI-digested *Bordetella* DNA with the 680 bp probe. 92

4.5. Hybridisation of BscI-digested *Bordetella* DNA with the 680 bp probe. 93

4.6. Hybridisation of restriction enzyme digested *B. pertussis* Taberman X-mode DNA with the 680 bp probe. 94

4.7. Hybridisation of ClaI-digested *Bordetella* DNA with the 620 bp probe. 94

4.8. Search for the presence of DNA homologous to DNA invertase target sequences. 95

4.9. Discussion. 97

CHAPTER 5. CHARACTERISATION OF A *B. PERTUSSIS* DNA FRAGMENT WHICH HYBRIDISED TO A *HIN* GENE PROBE.

5.1. Introduction. 102

5.2. Common regions of homology in DNA invertase sequences for the construction of DNA probes. 102

5.3. *Hin* gene amplified from *S. typhimurium* DNA by PCR. 103
5.4. Digestion of pKK1001B with BScI/StuI/SacI and hybridisation with hin gene probe. 104

5.5. Hybridisation of ClaI-digested Bordetella with the hin gene probe. 105

5.6. Chromosomal DNA of B. pertussis Taberman (X-mode and C-mode) digested with ClaI and SalI and hybridised with i) pKK1001B 680 bp fragment and ii) the hin PCR-amplified gene probe. 106

5.7. Sequence comparison of hin gene and B. pertussis tandem repeat. The region of homology used to design a 17 bp oligonucleotide DNA probe for hybridisation to Bordetella chromosomal DNA. 107

5.8. Discussion. 109

CHAPTER 6. ANALYSIS OF BORDETELLA DNA FOR HOMOLOGY TO FLAGELLIN GENE SEQUENCES. 111

6.1. Introduction. 112

6.2. Examination of partially-sequenced S. typhimurium H2 flagellin DNA for restriction sites. 112

6.3. Design of flagellin probes. 113

6.4. Hybridisation of ClaI-digested Bordetella DNA with S. typhimurium H1 flagellin gene probe. 114

6.5. Hybridisation of ClaI-digested Bordetella DNA with flagellin oligonucleotide probe. 115

6.6. Hybridisation of SalI-digested Bordetella DNA with S. typhimurium H1 flagellin gene probe. 115

6.7. Discussion. 117
CHAPTER 7. DETERMINATION OF THE METHYLATION STATE OF BORDETELLA DNA.

7.1. Introduction.  
7.2. Examination of Bordetella DNA for methylation.  
7.3. Discussion.

CHAPTER 8. DISCUSSION.

8.1. Analysis of a B. pertussis DNA fragment proposed as homologous to Salmonella typhimurium Hin invertase DNA.  
   a. Characterisation of a B. pertussis DNA fragment previously proposed as homologous to S. typhimurium Hin invertase DNA.  
   b. Identification of Bordetella DNA fragments hybridising to DNA invertase target sequences.  
   c. Characterisation of a B. pertussis DNA fragment hybridising to a hin gene probe.  
8.2. Analysis of Bordetella DNA for homology to flagellin gene sequences.  
8.3. Examination of the methylation state of Bordetella DNA.  
8.4. Conclusions.

REFERENCES.  
APPENDICES.  
   A.1.1. DNA sequence of the H1 flagellin gene.  
   A.1.2. DNA sequence of the tandem repeat of B. pertussis.  
   A.2. Publications.
SUMMARY OF RESEARCH

Previous studies had shown that a probe, containing a hin DNA invertase gene from *S. typhimurium*, hybridised to a *B. pertussis* chromosomal DNA fragment. This *B. pertussis* fragment was sequenced in this study. Analysis of the DNA and deduced protein sequence showed no homology to DNA invertases nor to other sequences except limited homology to insertion sequence transposases. Reanalysis of the hybridisation of the hin DNA fragment probe to chromosomal *Bordetella* DNA showed greater homology to a different fragment. It was deduced that this hybridisation may have been due to flagellin sequences present in the probe. A PCR-amplified hin probe derived from *S. typhimurium* DNA was therefore produced consisting only of hin DNA. This probe hybridised to tandem repeat sequences in *B. pertussis* DNA. These are known to be insertion sequences. It is hypothesised that the hybridisations to the DNA of the other *Bordetella* strains in this study were also due to limited homology to insertion sequences.

A PCR-amplified *S. typhimurium* H1 flagellin gene, and an oligonucleotide consisting of conserved N-terminal flagellin sequences, were also used as probes. They hybridised to the DNA of all four *Bordetella* strains although only two are recognised as expressing flagella. The two non-motile human pathogens *B. pertussis* and *B. parapertussis* thus both probably contain flagellin genes that are not expressed.

The methylation state of various phases and modes of the *Bordetella* DNA was examined. Previous studies had suggested that *B. pertussis* strains in the virulent phase were modified, possibly by methylation. Results in this study showed the presence of Dcm methylation in the DNA of some of the phase IV
avirulent strains of *B. pertussis* and also under modulated conditions in a virulent phase I strain. This might suggest that other additional modes of phase variation and regulation of virulence factors exist in addition to those already recognised.
ABBREVIATIONS.

AC  Adenylate cyclase enzyme.
ACT  Adenylate cyclase toxin.
ADP  Adenosine diphosphate.
AGG  Agglutinogen.
ATP  Adenosine triphosphate.
bp  Base pairs.
BGA  Bordet-Gengou agar.
Bvg (bvg)  *Bordetella* virulence protein (gene).
CAA  Casamino acids.
cAMP  Cyclic-adenosine monophosphate.
CAMR  Centre for Applied Microbiology and Research.
Cin (cin)  P1 DNA invertase protein (gene).
cix  *cin* crossover.
CsCl  Caesium chloride.
cyaA  Adenylate cyclase or cyclolysin gene.
Dam (dam)  DNA adenine methylase protein (gene).
Dcm (dcm)  DNA cytosine methylase protein (gene).
dATP  Deoxy-adenosine triphosphate.
dCTP  Deoxy-cytosine triphosphate.
dGTP  Deoxy-guanosine triphosphate.
dTTP  Deoxy-thymidine triphosphate.
Din  DNA invertase protein.
DNA  Deoxyribonucleic acid.
DTP  Diphtheria, tetanus and pertussis vaccine.

xvi
DTT  Dithiothreitol.
DW  Distilled water.
EDTA  Ethylenediamine tetra-acetic acid.
FHA (fha)  Filamentous haemagglutinin (gene).
*fin*  Fimbrial gene.
FIS  Factor for inversion stimulation.
*flaA*  Flagellin gene.
*fliC*  *S. typhimurium* phase 1, *H1* flagellin gene, new nomenclature.
*fliB*  *S. typhimurium* phase 2, *H2* flagellin gene, new nomenclature.
g  Gramme.
G* i*  Guanine nucleotide binding protein with inhibiting activity.
G* in* (gin)  Mu DNA invertase (gene).
g* ix*  *gin* crossover.
H* 1* (*H1*)  *S. typhimurium* phase 1 flagellin structural protein (gene).
H* 2* (*H2*)  *S. typhimurium* phase 2 flagellin structural protein (gene).
HA  Haemagglutination.
h* ag*  *E. coli* flagellin gene.
Hin (hin)  *S. typhimurium* DNA invertase (gene).
h* ix*  *hin* crossover.
HLT (*hlt*)  Heat-labile toxin (gene).
HLY  Haemolysin.
HSF  Histamine-sensitising factor.
IAP  Islets-activating protein.
IPTG  Isopropyl beta-D-thiogalactopyranoside.
IS Insertion sequence.
kb Kilobase pair.
kD Kilo Dalton.
LOS Lipooligosaccharide.
LPF Lymphocytosis-promoting factor.
LPS Lipopolysaccharide.
M Molar.
MAbs Monoclonal antibodies.
mg Milligram.
ml Millilitre.
mM Millimolar.
mod Environmental sensor/regulator gene.
Mr Molecular size.
NA Nutrient agar.
NB Nutrient broth.
OMP Outer-membrane protein.
ORF Open reading frame.
P Promoter.
PBS Phosphate-buffered saline.
PHLS Public Health Laboratory Service.
Pin (pin) E. coli DNA invertase (gene).
pix pin crossover.
PT (ptx) Pertussis toxin (gene).
PTd Toxoided pertussis toxin.
P. 69 B. pertussis 69kD outer membrane protein.
P. 68 B. bronchiseptica 68kD outer-membrane protein.
P. 70 B. parapertussis 70kD outer-membrane protein.
$rh1$ Repressor gene of phase 1 flagellin gene of $S. typhimurium$.

RNA Ribonucleic acid.

SDS Sodium dodecyl sulphate.

SDW Sterile distilled water.

SGM Society for General Microbiology.

SS Stainer and Scholte medium.

SSC Standard saline citrate.

TBE Tris-borate-EDTA buffer.

TE Tris-EDTA buffer.

TES Tris-EDTA-salt buffer.

Tn Transposon.

$vir$ Virulence-regulatory gene.

$vrg$ $vir$-repressed gene.

WHO World Health Organisation.

X-gal 5-Bromo-4-chloro-3-indoyl-beta-D-galactopyranoside.

$\mu g$ Microgram.

$\mu l$ Microlitre.

$\text{(w/v)}$ Weight: volume ratio.

$\text{(v/v)}$ Volume: volume ratio.

$^0C$ Degrees Celsius.

$32p$ Radioisotope of phosphorus.

$35S$ Radioisotope of sulphur.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CODES FOR AMINO ACIDS.</th>
<th>Three Letter Abbreviation</th>
<th>One Letter Symbol</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Alanine</td>
<td>Ala</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arginine</td>
<td>Arg</td>
<td>R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asparagine</td>
<td>Asn</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aspartic acid</td>
<td>Asp</td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asparagine or Aspartic acid</td>
<td>Asx</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cysteine</td>
<td>Cys</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glutamine</td>
<td>Gln</td>
<td>Q</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glutamic acid</td>
<td>Glu</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glutamine or Glutamic acid</td>
<td>Glx</td>
<td>Z</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glycine</td>
<td>Gly</td>
<td>G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Histidine</td>
<td>His</td>
<td>H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isoleucine</td>
<td>Ile</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leucine</td>
<td>Leu</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lysine</td>
<td>Lys</td>
<td>K</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methionine</td>
<td>Met</td>
<td>M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phenylalanine</td>
<td>Phe</td>
<td>F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proline</td>
<td>Pro</td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serine</td>
<td>Ser</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Threonine</td>
<td>Thr</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tryptophan</td>
<td>Trp</td>
<td>W</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tyrosine</td>
<td>Tyr</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valine</td>
<td>Val</td>
<td>V</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

xx
**List of Figures.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Figure</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>Diagrammatic representation of the clinical stages in pertussis and the underlying sequence of events (redrawn from Parton, 1989).</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>Phylogenetic tree of the genus <em>Bordetella</em> deduced from a computer analysis of the nucleotide sequence of the pertussis toxin operon (<em>Arico et al.</em>, 1987; redrawn from <em>Gross et al.</em>, 1989).</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>The location of genes (arrowed) encoding various virulence factors in the chromosome of <em>B. pertussis</em> shown diagrammatically.</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>Model of Bvg activation of virulence factor expression.</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>Schematic representation of the molecular process of the <em>Hin</em>-mediated DNA inversion reaction.</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>Genetic rearrangement controlling <em>S. typhimurium</em> flagellar phase transition.</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.7</td>
<td>Sequence relationships showing proposed sources of DNA which contributed to the DNA sequence of the <em>H2</em> region.</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.8</td>
<td>Evolutionary considerations to account for the origin of sequences in the <em>H2</em> gene switch.</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.9</td>
<td>Mu host range variation determined by a genetic rearrangement.</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.10</td>
<td>Three classes of bacterial transposons.</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.11</td>
<td>Phylogenetic tree derived by analysis of the primary structures of the site-specific recombinases or resolvases.</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3.1. Plasmid pKK1001B.

3.2. Nucleotide sequence of the invertible region of *S. typhimurium* and adjacent DNA in *H2* "on" orientation (redrawn from Silverman *et al.*, 1981).

3.3. Plasmid cloning vector, pIC20H, showing multiple cloning sites (Marsh *et al.*, 1984).

3.4. Electrophoresis of *Bsc*I-digested plasmid vector pIC20H and cosmid recombinant p16 showing the 0.58 kb fragment.

3.5. *HindIII* digestion of *B. pertussis* chromosomal DNA, vector and recombinant plasmids.

3.6. Restriction enzyme digestion of chromosomal DNA from *B. pertussis* strain Taberman, cosmid vector pLAFR1 and *B. pertussis* cosmid library clone p16.

3.7. Southern blot analysis of *B. pertussis* chromosomal DNA, cosmid vector pLAFR1 and cosmid clone p16 (gel, Fig. 3.6.) hybridised with the 0.58 kb *Bsc*I DNA fragment probe.

3.8. Schematic representation of restriction digest products of pIC20H containing 0.58 kb insert digested with *EcoRI, Sall* and *HindIII*.

3.9. DNA sequence of the *B. pertussis* ~0.58 kb *ClaI* fragment.

3.10. Comparison of ~0.58 kb DNA-translated largest open reading frame to insertion sequence IS3411 transposase.

3.11. Southern blot analysis of restriction enzyme-digested chromosomal DNA of *Bordetella* species hybridised with the 0.58 kb *ClaI* *B. pertussis* DNA fragment probe.
4.1. The plasmid pKK1001B from *E. coli* a) *(dam\(^+\)) and b) *(dam\(^-\))* digested with *BscI* and *StuI*.

4.2. Southern blot of *ClaI*-digested *Bordetella* chromosomal DNA hybridised with the ~680 bp fragment.

4.3. Southern blot of restriction enzyme-digested *B. pertussis* chromosomal DNA hybridised with the ~680 bp fragment.

4.4. Southern blot of *ClaI*-digested *Bordetella* chromosomal DNA hybridised with the ~620 bp fragment.

4.5. Recombination sites of the Hin-related inversion systems.

4.6. Southern blot of *ClaI*-digested *Bordetella* chromosomal DNA hybridised with oligonucleotide 2 (see Table 4.1.) constructed from the conserved target sequence of the Hin-related inversion systems.

4.7. Southern blot of *ClaI*-digested *Bordetella* chromosomal DNA hybridised with oligonucleotide 4 (Table 4.1) constructed from the conserved target sequence of the Hin-related inversion systems.

5.1. Comparison of the Hin-related recombinases, Min of plasmid p15B, Bin of *S. aureus* and TnpR of Tn3.

5.2. Southern blot of *Bordetella* chromosomal DNA hybridised with oligonucleotide 2 designed from regions of homology common to invertases.

5.3. Electrophoresis of the PCR-amplified *hin* DNA fragment from pKK1001B and *S. typhimurium* chromosomal DNA.
5.4. Digestion of pKK1001B with various combinations of *BscI, StuI* and *SacI*.

5.5. Southern blot of pKK1001B digested with various combinations of *BscI, StuI* and *SacI* (Fig. 5.4.) and hybridised with the PCR-amplified *hin* DNA probe.

5.6. Southern blot of *ClaI*-digested *Bordetella* chromosomal DNA hybridised with PCR-amplified *hin* DNA probe.

5.7. Southern blot of *ClaI* and *SalI*-digested *Bordetella* DNA hybridised with (a) 680 bp fragment (from pKK1001B digested with *BscI* and *StuI*) and (b) PCR amplified *hin* DNA.

5.8. DNA sequence comparison of *B. pertussis* tandem repeat and PCR amplified *hin* DNA.

5.9. Southern blot of *ClaI*-digested *Bordetella* chromosomal DNA hybridised with 17 bp probe derived from the *B. pertussis* tandem repeat sequence.

6.1. Alignment of H1 and H2 flagellin DNA sequences.

6.2. Electrophoresis of the PCR-amplified *H1* gene from *S. typhimurium* chromosomal DNA.

6.3. Southern blot of *ClaI*-digested *Bordetella* chromosomal DNA hybridised with the PCR-amplified *H1* flagellin gene of *S. typhimurium*.

6.4. Southern blot from Fig. 6.3. stripped of the probe and rehybridised with the radiolabelled 15 bp oligonucleotide derived from the conserved N-terminal flagellin sequences.

6.5. Southern blot of *SalI*-digested *Bordetella* chromosomal DNA hybridised with the PCR-amplified *H1* flagellin gene of *S. typhimurium*. 115
7.2. *Msp*I and *Hpa*II-digested *Bordetella* chromosomal DNA. 121
7.3. *Eco*RII-digested *Bordetella* chromosomal DNA. 122
7.4. *Bsr*NI-digested *Bordetella* chromosomal DNA. 122

Appendix.
A.1.1. DNA sequence of the *H1* flagellin gene. 161
A.1.2. DNA sequence of the tandem repeat of *B. pertussis*. 161
List of Tables.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table</th>
<th>Following Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2.1.  Bordetella strains and serotypes used in this study.</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2.  Other bacteria.</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3.  Cosmid, plasmid and phage vectors.</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4.  Phenotypic characteristics of the Bordetella strains used in this study.</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5.  Restriction enzymes.</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.6.  Methylase sensitive enzymes.</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.1.  Mixed sequence oligonucleotides constructed from related inverted repeats.</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.1.  Isochizomers and difference in sensitivity to methylated DNA at particular modified sites.</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER 1

GENERAL INTRODUCTION.
1.1. THE GENUS BORDETELLA.

The genus *Bordetella* is comprised of four species, all of which are respiratory tract pathogens: *B. pertussis*, *B. parapertussis*, *B. bronchiseptica* and *B. avium*. *B. pertussis* and *B. parapertussis* are human pathogens while *B. bronchiseptica* is a broad host-range mammalian pathogen and *B. avium* an avian pathogen. *B. pertussis* causes pertussis or whooping cough in humans. Originally *B. pertussis* was classified in the genus *Haemophilus* due to an apparent requirement for blood in the culture medium. Further work showed that blood was not a nutritional requirement but its presence aided in absorbing growth inhibitors (Hornibrook, 1940). The bordetellae were therefore subsequently named after Jules Bordet who in 1906 with O. Gengou first isolated the Gram-negative coccobacillus now known as *B. pertussis*. The name pertussis was derived from the Latin (per = severe, tussis = cough) relating to the symptoms of whooping cough in man. *B. parapertussis* was distinguished as a separate species by Eldering and Kendrick (1938) and is generally regarded as causing a milder form of pertussis (Lautrop, 1971). In addition to infecting humans, it has also been isolated from healthy and pneumonic sheep (Chen *et al.*, 1988).

*B. bronchiseptica* was first isolated from the respiratory tracts of dogs (Ferry, 1911). It has been found to be the primary cause of kennel cough in dogs (Wright *et al.*, 1973) and one of the agents of atrophic rhinitis in pigs (Rutter, 1983). It has also been shown to be a respiratory tract pathogen of numerous laboratory and domestic animals. It can be encountered occasionally as a commensal in the human respiratory tract and, rarely, as a pathogen in immunocompromised patients (Woolfrey and Moody, 1991). The biology of *B. bronchiseptica* has been reviewed by Goodnow (1980). *B. avium* is an agent of respiratory disease of poultry and in particular turkey coryza or rhinotracheitis (Kersters *et al.*, 1984). Although it causes a severe respiratory disease in turkeys, it shows a mild to unapparent infection in other avian species. The species had been previously identified as "bronchiseptica-like", then *Alcaligenes faecalis*.
(Hinz et al. 1978; Simmons et al., 1980) until Kersters et al. (1984) placed it in the bordetellae.

A close phenotypic and genetic relationship between the four species has been shown on the basis of serological characteristics and by DNA-rRNA hybridisation studies (Kersters et al., 1984), DNA-DNA hybridisation of *B. pertussis*, *B. parapertussis* and *B. bronchiseptica* (Kloos et al., 1981) and electrophoretic mobility patterns of metabolic enzymes (Musser et al., 1986). *B. avium* has a lower G + C content (61.6-62.6 mol%) compared to the other bordetellae (67.7-69.5 mol%).

1.2. PERTUSSIS-THE DISEASE.

All human age groups are susceptible to pertussis or whooping cough, but the most clinically severe cases are seen in babies under one year old. Following infection with *B. pertussis*, or occasionally *B. parapertussis*, the classical disease syndrome has three notable stages: catarrhal, paroxysmal and convalescent. After an incubation period of 6-20 days the "catarrhal stage" develops with mild coughing and sneezing resembling a common cold. This stage may last several weeks, during which *B. pertussis* can be isolated from the patient. The bacteria adhere to the epithelial cells of the respiratory tract resulting in ciliostasis and shedding of the ciliated cells causing the accumulation of thick mucus. During the paroxysmal stage the cough develops its explosive character and the characteristic whoop, which is caused by inhalation past the swollen, partially closed glottis. The violent coughing serves to clear the airways of accumulated mucus and cell debris. The paroxysmal stage usually lasts between 1-4 weeks, then the symptoms slowly begin to decrease as the patient enters the convalescent phase which can last for 10-16 weeks (Walker, 1988).

Many of the complications associated with the disease are the result of the force of the coughing fits. Serious sequelae such as seizures, encephalopathy and death can occur after the paroxysmal stage and secondary infections can give
rise to bronchial pneumonia (Jamieson, 1973). Pertussis and sequelae have been reviewed by Olson (1975) and Manclark and Cowell (1984). The isolation rate for *B. pertussis* drops progressively after the onset of the paroxysmal phase. Broad spectrum antibiotics given during the early stage of the disease are effective against the bacteria but have little or no effect on the clinical course of the established disease. Fig. 1.1. shows a diagrammatic representation of the underlying sequence of events in pertussis. *B. bronchiseptica* and *B. avium* also cause localised infections of the upper respiratory tract in their respective hosts. The diseases have characteristics in common with each other and with whooping cough in humans (Gray *et al.*, 1983).

1.3. GROWTH OF THE BORDETELLEAE.

Bordet-Gengou agar or charcoal agar are used as solid media for the growth of bordetellae. Additions to the media of blood, charcoal, soluble starch or anionic-exchange resins absorb growth inhibitors. A chemically-defined medium (Stainer and Scholte, 1971) with the addition of heptakis (2, 6-0-dimethyl) beta cyclodextrin (Imaizumi *et al.*, 1983) is suitable for broth cultures. Growth conditions and media have been reviewed by Stainer (1988). *B. parapertussis*, *B. bronchiseptica* and *B. avium* in contrast to *B. pertussis*, are not sensitive to the growth inhibitors in solid media and can be successfully grown on nutrient agar.

1.4. VIRULENCE FACTORS OF *B. PERTUSSIS*.

*B. pertussis* produces a wide variety of virulence-associated factors and adhesins. These have been assigned roles in the disease process, promoting a fuller understanding of the pathogenicity of pertussis. Virulence determinants have been reviewed by Wardlaw and Parton (1983), Robinson *et al.* (1985a), Weiss and Hewlett (1986) and Wardlaw and Parton (1988). It was originally thought that the symptoms of pertussis were mediated by pertussis toxin (PT)
Fig. 1.1. Diagrammatic representation of the clinical stages in pertussis and the underlying sequence of events (redrawn from Parton, 1989).
CLINICAL STAGES IN THE HOST

PARASITE EVENTS

EXPOSURE

TRANSMISSION OF B. PERTUSSIS TO
SUSCEPTIBLE HOST

INCUBATION

ATTACHMENT AND GROWTH

CATARRHAL

SECRETION OR RELEASE OF TOXINS

PAROXYSMAL

STIMULATION OF HOST
IMMUNE RESPONSES AND IMPAIRMENT OF HOST DEFENCES;
REPAIR MECHANISMS

RESPIRATORY AND INITIATION OF LOCAL AND
CNS COMPLICATIONS SYSTEMIC

TERM IN A TION OF PATHOLOGY

INFECTION

RECOVERY FROM DISEASE

CONVALESCENT
alone with the aid of several adhesins (Pittman, 1979). The inability to isolate the organism during the most severe stage of the disease led to the hypothesis that the majority of clinical symptoms were due to a long-acting toxin(s) produced by the bacteria (Pittman, 1984b). Subsequent studies have revealed a larger number of virulence-associated factors which appear to play a role in \textit{B. pertussis} infection. The construction of a number of \textit{B. pertussis} strains containing single Tn5 insertions within genes encoding various virulence factors (Weiss \textit{et al}., 1983) has played a major role in assessing the contribution of individual factors to the disease in laboratory animals. For example the virulence properties of a mutant strain lacking a given factor have been compared to those of the wild type strain in an infant mouse model (Weiss \textit{et al}., 1984).

Attachment of the \textit{Bordetella} to host tissue is a first step in pathogenesis. In whooping cough, several bacterial factors have been implicated. These include pertussis toxin; filamentous haemagglutinin, FHA, (Tuomanen and Weiss, 1985); fimbriae (Mooi \textit{et al}., 1992) and a 69 kD outer-membrane protein, pertactin, (Leininger \textit{et al}., 1991). Toxins are also important in the infectious process and include pertussis toxin and adenylate cyclase toxin. Further toxins have also been shown to be produced by \textit{B. pertussis}: lipopolysaccharide (endotoxin), heat-labile dermonecrotising toxin and tracheal cytotoxin. All the \textit{Bordetella} species share certain virulence factors, which include the dermonecrotizing toxin and tracheal cytotoxin (Gentry-Weeks \textit{et al}., 1988), but \textit{B. avium} lacks the genes for agglutinogens, adenylate cyclase toxin and pertussis toxin present in the other three species (Mooi \textit{et al}., 1987; Arico and Rappuoli, 1987; Brownlie \textit{et al}., 1988). Although \textit{B. pertussis} is the only \textit{Bordetella} to produce pertussis toxin (PT), \textit{B. parapertussis} and \textit{B. bronchiseptica} have been shown to contain mutated, transcriptionally-silent PT genes (Arico \textit{et al}., 1987). Motility is expressed only by \textit{B. bronchiseptica} and \textit{B. avium} (Pittman, 1984a; Kersters \textit{et al}., 1984). The various virulence factors of \textit{B. pertussis} will now be examined in more detail.
1.4.1. Pertussis toxin.

Although the actual role of pertussis toxin (PT) in whooping cough is far from clear, there has been much speculation. The toxin has had many names, reflecting its wide range of biological activities. These include lymphocytosis-promoting factor (LPF), histamine-sensitising factor (HSF), pertussigen and islets-activating protein (IAP) (Yajima et al., 1978). It has been hypothesised (Pittman, 1979; 1984b) as being responsible for the paroxysmal cough and therefore of fundamental importance in the pathogenesis of pertussis. The adhesion properties of PT have been shown in mutation experiments. Transposon mutants lacking PT show decreased adherence to rabbit and human ciliated cells in an in vitro assay (Tuomanen and Weiss, 1985). Purified PT is capable of conferring protection to mice against intranasal and intracerebral challenge with *B. pertussis* (Munoz et al., 1981). PT and its effects have been widely reviewed, by Wardlaw and Parton (1983), Sekura et al. (1985), Ui (1988), Furman et al. (1988), Munoz (1988), Monack et al. (1989b) and Kaslow and Burns (1992).

The role of PT has been better understood since its structure was determined. PT is composed of six polypeptides of five different types, S1 - S5. An A - B subunit structure has been proposed for the toxin, the A subunit being the active part, the B subunit the binding oligomer (Tamura et al., 1982). The A or S1 subunit is enzymatically-active causing ADP-ribosylation of a G protein, $G_i$ in target mammalian cells. $G_i$ is a guanine nucleotide-binding protein that inhibits adenylate cyclase from generating cyclic AMP (Yajima et al., 1978; Katada and Ui, 1982) and ADP-ribosylation prevents this and thus disrupts normal cell function by raising internal cAMP concentrations. The B subunit oligomer is composed of the polypeptides S2 to S5 in the ratio 1:1:2:1 (Katada and Ui, 1982) and consists of two dimers (S2-S4 and S3-S4) connected by S5. The B oligomer binds to the target cell receptors of eukaryotic cells facilitating
the translocation of the S1 subunit across the membrane and into the cells by receptor-mediated endocytosis (Tamura et al., 1982, Burns, 1988). *B. pertussis* binds to glycoconjugates on human cilia and macrophages; the results of Wout *et al.* (1992) indicate that the carbohydrate recognition domains of both S2 and S3 participate in adherence of *B. pertussis* to human macrophages.

The PT genes have been cloned (Locht *et al.*, 1986; Nicosia *et al.*, 1986) and sequenced, and the amino-acid sequences of the individual subunits deduced. The amino acid sequences of S2 and S3 were found to be 70% homologous. The genes are arranged in an operon under the control of a single positively-regulated promoter. The PT genes present in *B. bronchiseptica* and *B. parapertussis* display a high (over 96%) degree of nucleotide sequence homology to those in *B. pertussis* but neither of the former species expresses the genes (Arico and Rappuoli, 1987). This is probably due to multiple mutations in their promoter regions (Marchitto *et al.*, 1987). The cloned PT gene from *B. pertussis* is expressed in both of these species (Lee *et al.*, 1989) but PT is not secreted, suggesting that their PT transport mechanisms are either absent or non-functional. No DNA homology to PT genes has been shown in *B. avium*.

Arico *et al.* (1987) and Gross *et al.* (1989) have discussed the possible evolutionary relatedness of the bordetellae based on the nucleotide sequence of the pertussis toxin operon (Fig. 1.2). This figure shows *B. avium* as the most distant relative of *B. pertussis* as PT genes are not present. *B. parapertussis* and *B. bronchiseptica* are grouped together in having, albeit inactive, toxin genes. *B. pertussis* with a fully functional toxin gene is placed separately. It is not clear at present if the PT genes were acquired by the ancestral *Bordetella* strain in an active form which then mutated to inactivity through niche specialisation or vice versa.

Downstream of the PT operon are open reading frames involved in pertussis toxin biosynthesis. They have striking sequence similarities to the *virB* operons required for the transfer of the T-DNA from the resident Ti plasmid in
Fig. 1.2. Phylogenetic tree of the genus *Bordetella* deduced from a computer analysis of the nucleotide sequence of the pertussis toxin operon (Arico et al., 1987; redrawn from Gross et al., 1989).
ANCESTRAL
BORDETELLA

B. AVIUM

B. BRONCHISEPTICA

B. PARAPERTUSSIS

B. PERTUSSIS
Agrobacterium tumefaciens to plant cells (Weiss et al., 1993; Shirasu and Kado, 1993). One of the PT open reading frames has been shown to be required for pertussis toxin secretion across the B. pertussis outer cell membrane (Covacci and Rappuoli, 1993).

Murine monoclonal antibodies (MAbs) against the different PT subunits have been used to define the main structural and functional domains of PT (Sato et al., 1984; Sato et al., 1987). Amino acid substitutions within the enzymatically-active subunit S1 abolished its ADP-ribosyl transferase activity and the genetically toxoided PT molecule protected mice from intracerebral challenge with virulent B. pertussis (Pizza et al., 1989).

The five genes encoding pertussis toxin have been expressed separately in E. coli (Burnette et al., 1988) but the recombinant products did not assemble to form the pertussis holotoxin product. Recombinant pertussis toxin subunits produced in B. parapertussis and B. bronchiseptica are, however, assembled as native holotoxin (Lee et al., 1989). Burnette et al. (1992) have assembled the PT B oligomer in vitro after producing the recombinant polypeptides in E. coli. This enabled B oligomer production without active PT and other toxic constituents of the B. pertussis bacterium. Immunisation of mice with the recombinant B oligomer protected them from the lymphocytosis-promoting activities of PT.

1.4.2. Filamentous haemagglutinin.

Filamentous haemagglutinin, FHA, is a protein located on the surface of B. pertussis and is also secreted into the culture medium during growth. The protein forms filamentous aggregates 2 nm in diameter and 40-100 nm long (Arai and Sato, 1976). Haemagglutination by B. pertussis was first reported by Keogh et al. (1947). Two haemagglutinins, FHA and PT are now recognised (Arai and Sato, 1976). FHA is 5-7 times more active as a haemagglutinin than PT but is sensitive to inhibition by micromolar concentrations of cholesterol (Sato et al., 1983).
Antibodies against both haemagglutinins have been shown to confer passive protection against intranasal challenge in mice (Munoz et al., 1981), suggesting a role for these factors in pathogenesis. The purified FHA molecule confers active immunity against aerosol challenge in mice (Kimura et al., 1990). These authors also indicated that FHA is an important factor in the initial adherence and colonisation of the trachea. Observations supporting an adhesive role for PT and FHA have been reported by Tuomanen (1986). Transposon mutants lacking FHA show decreased adherence to rabbit and human ciliated cells in an in vitro assay (Tuomanen et al., 1985). The addition of exogenous purified FHA to the mutant strain allowed the recovery of full adherence (Tuomanen and Weiss, 1985).

Two different binding domains for cellular attachment of FHA have been identified. One is the putative cell-binding amino acid sequence arginine-glycine-aspartic acid (RGD) (Ruoslahti and Pierschbacher, 1986). These sequences in FHA interact with receptors on macrophages (Relman et al., 1990). The other binding activity is shown by the inhibition of binding of FHA to epithelial cells by the addition of galactose (Tuomanen et al., 1988). A potential lectin-like site has been identified on FHA (Delisse-Gathoye et al., 1990). Attachment to cells is often a prerequisite for bacteria to enter cells and virulent B. pertussis has been shown to enter human epithelial cells in vitro (Ewanowich et al., 1989). In addition, bacteria have been visualised within alveolar macrophages in a mouse model of whooping cough (Cheers and Gray, 1969).

The FHA structural gene (fhaB) has been sequenced; the primary translation product is a protein of 370 kD which is processed to form a 220 kD FHA polypeptide. This probably occurs by proteolytic processing eliminating the carboxy-terminal portion (Delisse-Gathoye et al., 1990; Domenighini et al., 1990). The fhaB gene lies adjacent to the bvg locus, which encodes the components of a trans-acting regulatory system (Stibitz et al., 1988; Relman et
al., 1989; see Section II5.). The bvg system controls the expression of FHA at the level of transcription (Miller et al., 1989). Locht et al. (1992) identified accessory genes downstream of fhaB with sequence similarity to genes essential for synthesis of pili in Gram-negative organisms and mutational inactivation of these accessory genes results in a FHA-negative phenotype. Thus Locht et al. (1992) suggested that B. pertussis possesses common accessory genes responsible for the biogenesis of two different surface structures, FHA and pili.

1.4.3. Agglutinogens.

Agglutinogens (AGGs) are surface antigens that stimulate the production of agglutinins, antibodies resulting in bacterial cell agglutination. The combinations of AGGs differentiate the main B. pertussis serotypes, by a serotyping scheme developed by Eldering et al. (1957). There are six B. pertussis specific AGGs, of which AGG 1 is common to all strains and AGGs 2-6 can be found in various combinations on different strains. It has been suggested that the three major AGGs are 1, 2 and 3, while 4, 5 and 6 are minor ones (Preston et al., 1982). AGG 7 is common to all strains of the genus Bordetella, while AGG 12 is specific for B. bronchiseptica and AGG 14 is specific for B. parapertussis (Robinson et al., 1989a). B. avium shares several AGGs with B. bronchiseptica (Kersters et al., 1984).

The nature of AGG 1 present on all strains of B. pertussis has yet to be determined but it does not appear to be a fimbrial protein. Certain monoclonal antibodies that react with lipooligosaccharide A (LOS A) can agglutinate most strains of B. pertussis, but not B. bronchiseptica or B. parapertussis strains. Hence the polysaccharide chain of LOS has similar properties to AGG 1 (Li et al., 1988). AGG 1 may be relevant for distinguishing B. pertussis from other Bordetella species (Robinson et al., 1989a). The two main serotype AGGs of B. pertussis correspond to fimbrial components (Ashworth et al., 1982; Mooi et al., 1987). One type of fimbriae bears AGG 2 with a subunit Mr of 22500 and is
found on 1,2,0 and 1,2,3 serotypes. Another type bears agglutinogen 3 with a subunit Mr of 22000 and is found on 1,0,3 and 1,2,3 serotypes (Robinson, 1989b). The amino acid sequences of the fimbrial AGG2 and 3 subunit proteins are very closely related (Mooi et al., 1987). The amino-terminal sequences of these subunits have also been shown to share 50% homology with that of E. coli K99 fimbrial subunits (Mooi et al., 1987).

The fimbrial agglutinogens of B. pertussis have been suggested to act as adhesins to the ciliated epithelial cells of the respiratory tract during the disease process. This is by analogy with other bacterial pathogens where adherence is associated with possession of fimbriae (de Graaf and Mooi, 1986). Monoclonal antibodies to AGGs 2 and 3 inhibit the binding of B. pertussis to Vero (monkey kidney) cells and HeLa cells but these are non-ciliated (Gorringe et al., 1985; Redhead, 1985). Tuomanen and Weiss (1985) have shown that non-fimbriate B. pertussis adhere to ciliated human cells. This resulted in Tuomanen (1988) suggesting that there is little evidence for the role of AGGs as adhesins to ciliated cells in humans, although cell-types or receptors to which B. pertussis fimbriae adhere specifically may yet be identified. To study the relevance of B. pertussis fimbriae to bacterial disease, fimbrial mutants were constructed by Mooi et al. (1992). A fimbrial mutant was analysed in a mouse respiratory infection model together with a strain harbouring a deletion in the gene for FHA. Both mutants were affected in their ability to persist in the trachea. Persistence in the nasopharynx was affected only by the mutation in the FHA gene. Neither the FHA nor the fimbrial mutants were affected in their ability to persist in the lung.

Although these results suggest that the B. pertussis fimbriae may not be adhesins to human ciliated respiratory cells, their ability to produce an antibody response is important in discussions on vaccine production. Mice immunised with purified fimbriae are protected against subsequent intranasal challenge with virulent B. pertussis (Robinson et al., 1985b; Zhang et al., 1985). Protection
afforded by purified fimbrial AGGs is also found to be serospecific (Ashworth et al., 1988; Robinson et al., 1989b).

The two genes encoding the AGG 2 and 3 fimbrial subunits (fim2 and fim3 respectively) have been cloned and sequenced (Livey et al., 1987; Mooi et al., 1990). Pedroni et al. (1988) have detected in B. pertussis a gene designated fimX which shows homology in its nucleotide sequence with the genes coding for fimbrial AGGs 2 and 3. Riboli et al. (1991) have shown the fimX promoter to be active, although at a low level and to be vir-regulated. Thus the fimX protein might be produced in minute quantities which are not detectable by conventional methods. It is possible that FimX (20kD), an as yet unidentified polypeptide, could be a structural component of B. pertussis fimbriae of a different serotype. The work of Mooi et al. (1992) on fimbrial mutants has suggested the presence of a fourth fimbrial gene, fimY.

TnphoA mutagenesis by Willems et al. (1992) identified three additional fimbrial genes designated fimB, fimC and fimD. The fimbrial gene cluster was positively regulated by the bvg locus. Interestingly the fimbrial gene cluster was found to be located directly downstream of the gene coding for FHA (Locht et al., 1992). The close association of the fim and fha genes suggests co-operation between the two loci in the pathogenesis of pertussis or in mutual aspects of assembly of the components of the cell surface.

The structural gene of the serotype 2 fimbrial subunit has been expressed in E. coli (Walker et al., 1990). However, it is antigenically different from that produced in B. pertussis and exhibits only limited cross-reactivity to wild-type fimbriae. This suggests that assembly of fully immunogenic fimbriae in E. coli may require additional fimbrial assembly proteins or minor fimbrial structural proteins. These could well be the gene products of fimB,C and D (Willems et al., 1992). Walker et al. (1991) demonstrated that recombinant serotype 2 fimbrial subunits that are indistinguishable from native fimbriae can be produced in B. parapertussis and B. bronchiseptica expressing fimbrial accessory genes.
1.4.4. Outer-membrane proteins.

The 69 kD non-fimbrial outer-membrane protein (P69) is an agglutinogen found on all virulent strains of *B. pertussis* regardless of serotype (Brennan *et al.*, 1988). Antigenically-related proteins have also been found in *B. parapertussis*, P70 (70 kD), and *B. bronchiseptica*, P68 (68 kD). The genes encoding P69, P70 and P68 have been cloned and sequenced (Charles *et al.*, 1989; Li *et al.*, 1991a; 1992). Slide agglutination of *E. coli* expressing P70 and P68 with anti-P69 antibody, strongly suggest that these proteins also can function as agglutinogens (Li *et al.*, 1991a; 1992). The name pertactin (per = pertussis and tactin = to touch) has been proposed for P69 because of the ability of the protein to bind to eukaryotic cells (Leininger *et al.*, 1991). Like FHA, pertactin (69kD) contains the putative cell-binding amino acid sequence RGD (Charles *et al.*, 1989). This suggests that P69 could have a role in bacterial adhesion. Two apparent isoforms of the virulence-associated 69 kD protein have been purified and examined for structural and immunological differences (Gotto *et al.*, 1993). Mass spectrometry showed a difference of 2,060 Da; both forms were protective in a mouse model, eliciting bactericidal antibodies and reducing respiratory tract colonisation.

1.4.5. Lipopolysaccharide endotoxin.

As with other Gram-negative bacteria, lipopolysaccharides are produced by all the bordetellae and have the characteristic range of endotoxin activities (Chaby and Caroff, 1988). *B. pertussis* produces two distinct lipopolysaccharides, LPS-I and LPS-II (Peppler, 1984). In common with LPS from other bacteria, they are components of the cell wall, heat-stable, antigenic, pyrogenic and toxic. The occurrence of anti-LPS in pertussis convalescent sera has been described by Winsnes (1988) but its role in pertussis pathogenesis has not been established. SDS-PAGE profiles have indicated that the LPS of some *B. pertussis* strains
lacked high molecular weight bands suggesting a lack of long O-side chains (Byrd et al., 1991). Other workers have shown that LPS profiles of *B. pertussis* strains contain intermediate to small molecular weight bands typical of O-side chain material. This later type has been referred to as lipooligosaccharide or LOS (Li et al., 1988). As previously mentioned, Li et al. (1988) have presented evidence suggesting that LOS A may correspond to AGG-1. *B. parapertussis* and smooth strains of *B. bronchiseptica* had LPS profiles with similar high mol. wt bands which were interpreted as core structure fragments with variable length O-side chain-like material (Byrd et al., 1991).

1.4.6. Adenylate cyclase toxin and haemolysin.

Hewlett and Wolff (1976) discovered that *B. pertussis* produces adenylate cyclase, an enzyme that converts ATP to cyclic AMP (cAMP). The cytotoxic form of adenylate cyclase (ACT) is able to enter eukaryotic cells. This generates high levels of intracellular cAMP, resulting in impaired cellular function (Confer and Eaton, 1982; Middlebrook and Dorland, 1984). Weiss et al. (1983) isolated a mutant with a single Tn5 insertion which had lost both adenylate cyclase toxin and haemolytic activities. Evidence for the genetic relationship between the two activities was confirmed by Brownlie et al. (1986) using a recombinant cosmid which restored AC and HLY activity to this mutant. Glaser et al. (1988) cloned and expressed the adenylate cyclase operon. The sequence data revealed the adenylate cyclase operon to be composed of four open reading frames, *cyAA, B, D* and *E* (Glaser et al., 1988). The genes *cyAB, D* and *E* are located downstream from the *cyAA* gene and their gene products are necessary for transport of the toxin from the cell. The *cyAA* gene encodes the virulence factor, cyclolysin, a bifunctional protein of predicted Mr 177kD exhibiting adenylate cyclase and haemolytic activities. The toxin is activated by calmodulin, a eukaryotic calcium-binding protein (Wolff et al., 1980) and the 400-residue amino-terminal domain of *cyAA* corresponds to the calmodulin (CaM)-activated catalytic activity.
The carboxy-terminal 1,300 residues of the *B. pertussis* structural gene *cyaA* were found to show significant similarity with the *E. coli* structural gene, *hlyA*, for alpha haemolysin. In addition, the *cyaB* and *D* genes are homologous to the *E. coli hlyB* and *D* genes necessary for haemolysin secretion (Glasner *et al.*, 1988). The open reading frame *cyaE* was found to have no homologous counterpart in the *E. coli* haemolysin operon. However, subsequent analysis of an open reading frame upstream of the *cyaA* gene identified the *cyaC* gene with homology to the *E. coli hlyC* gene. It also appears to encode a protein with a function similar to that of the *E. coli* product i.e. post-translational activation of the structural gene product. The *cyaC* gene is orientated opposite to *cyaA* in contrast to *E. coli*. The difference in orientation of activator and structural genes may represent a mechanism of regulation in *B. pertussis* (Barry *et al.*, 1991).

Weiss and Hewlett (1986) showed the toxin to have a remarkably diverse spectrum of inhibitory actions on immune effector cells. The transposon mutant of *B. pertussis* unable to express the adenylate cyclase operon has been shown to have reduced virulence in mice (Weiss *et al.*, 1983; Olander *et al.*, 1986; Brownlie *et al.*, 1988; Khelef *et al.*, 1992). Monoclonal anti-ACT antibody, incubated with a challenge inoculum, protected mice from respiratory infection (Brezin *et al.*, 1987). Guiso *et al.* (1991) showed that active immunisation with purified adenylate-cyclase-haemolysin (AC-Hly) induced a protection in mice against *B. pertussis* significantly shortening the period of bacterial colonisation of the mouse respiratory tract. These data indicate that the ACT is an important virulence factor and may be an important immunogen.

1.4.7. Dermonecrotic toxin.

Dermonecrotic toxin (DNT) or heat-labile toxin (HLT) is produced by *B. pertussis, B. parapertussis* and *B. bronchiseptica*. The toxin causes necrotic lesions in mice when injected subcutaneously at low doses, and is lethal if the dose is increased (Livey and Wardlaw, 1984). It has a constrictive effect on vascular
smooth muscle and may cause inflammation of the respiratory tract mucosa during the whooping cough disease process (Nakase and Endoh, 1988) but its exact role in the disease process has not been defined.

1.4.8. Tracheal cytotoxin.

The isolation and determination of the mode of action of tracheal cytotoxin (TCT) was done by Goldman et al. (1982). Cookson et al. (1989) have proposed that TCT is derived by enzymatic cleavage of the cell wall component peptidoglycan. TCT has been shown to have cytopathic effects on cells of the respiratory epithelium of hamster tracheal rings in vitro (Goldman and Herwaldt, 1985). Damage to, and the subsequent extrusion of ciliated cells from, the respiratory epithelium in in vitro studies resembles the histopathological events in the disease process of pertussis. All four *Bordetella* species produce TCT.

The locations of the genes encoding various virulence factors in the chromosome of *B. pertussis* are shown in Fig. 1.3.

1.5. FLAGELLA IN BORDETELLA AND OTHER ORGANISMS.

The potential of bacterial flagella as virulence factors derives from their capacity to promote motility, propelling bacteria towards a chemoattractant or aiding penetration of the mucous blanket and epithelial cells (Poxton and Arbuthnott, 1990). Flagella are putative virulence factors for *Vibrio cholerae* enabling penetration of the mucous blanket of the small intestine (Attridge and Rowley, 1983). Historically *Bordetella* flagella have not been regarded as virulence factors, and so are dealt with in a separate section, although recently there has been more interest in these flagella and their manner of expression. Flagella and motility are expressed in only two of the *Bordetella* strains: *B. bronchiseptica* and *B. avium* (Pittman, 1984a; Kersters et al., 1984) and the flagella are in a peritrichous arrangement. They are not expressed in the human
Fig. 1.3. The location of genes (arrowed) encoding various virulence factors in the chromosome of *B. pertussis* shown diagrammatically.

Coordinates are given in kilobase pairs. (Redrawn from Stibitz and Garletts, 1992).

Abbreviations: *cya*: adenylate cyclase (or cyclolysin) gene; *por*: porin gene; *fim2, fim3, fimX, fimA, B, C, D*: fimbrial genes; *fhaB, fhaC*: filamentous haemagglutinin genes; *bvgS, bvgA*: *Bordetella* virulence genes; *dnt*: dermonecrotic toxin gene and *ptx*: pertussis toxin gene.
pathogens, *B. pertussis* or *B. parapertussis*. *B. bronchiseptica* produces two classes of flagellins of 35 and 40kD but only one type is expressed by any one strain. All *B. avium* strains tested by Akerley *et al.* (1992) expressed only a 42kD flagellin. Amino acid sequence analysis of the two *B. bronchiseptica* flagellins at their N-terminal regions revealed 100% identity with each other and 80% identity with *S. typhimurium* flagellin. The extensive conservation of flagellin sequences at the amino and carboxy termini has been noted for a variety of genera (Joys, 1988) and it has been proposed that these domains are essential for filament formation (Kuwajima, 1988).

In both *S. typhimurium* and *E. coli*, which encode flagellin molecules that are similar to those expressed by *B. bronchiseptica*, hierarchical control of flagellar component synthesis has been demonstrated (Komeda, 1982; Macnab, 1987; Kutsukake *et al.*, 1990; Gillen and Hughes, 1991). The flagellar genes of *S. typhimurium* and *E. coli* are found in clusters termed regions I, II and III in the chromosome. Within each region there are several operons each containing anywhere from one to as many as nine genes. The flagellar operons form a coordinated system of expression, a regulon. Four classes have been defined (1, 2, 3a and 3b) where expression of one operon in a given class is necessary for expression of subsequent classes. The regulatory hierarchy acts to ensure that the highly expressed filament structural protein, flagellin, is synthesised only after a prerequisite set of other structural proteins has been expressed and properly assembled. Kutsukake *et al.* (1990) provided evidence that the cascade transcription of the flagellar regulon closely parallels the assembly hierarchy of the flagellar structure. They proposed that classes 1, 2, and 3 be called the early, middle, and late flagellar operons. The flagellar operons from enteric bacteria are preceded by a DNA sequence highly homologous to *B. subtilis* (σ) promoters. This might be a means of controlling the transcription of the flagellal genes (secondary, alternative sigma factors to the predominant RNA polymerase, Helmann and Chamberlain, 1987). As a further control in *S.*
*typhimurium*, anti-sigma factor *flgM* protein binds to the secondary sigma factor and disturbs its ability to form a complex with RNA polymerase core enzyme; a novel type of negative regulator (Ohnishi et al., 1992). Transcriptional regulatory signals for flagellar genes are highly conserved between bacteria separated by a large evolutionary distance. They suggested that one possibility was that these particular functions of flagella were so essential to primordial bacterial growth that they were established early in evolution (Arnosti and Chamberlain, 1989).

1.6. PERTUSSIS VACCINE.

The pertussis vaccine currently in use in the UK is a suspension of killed whole cells. The suspension is usually administered in combination with purified toxoids of diphtheria and tetanus as the DTP vaccine. The introduction of pertussis vaccine into widespread use in the UK during the 1950s led to a marked reduction in the incidence of the disease. The use of the vaccine, however, became controversial due to certain side effects. These included minor reactions: redness, pain, fever which occur in most of the vaccinees; worrisome reactions: prolonged crying, convulsions and collapse which occurred at a frequency of 0.1-1% of recipients. In addition to these conditions, serious side effects such as brain damage and death have been associated with pertussis vaccination (Manclark and Cowell, 1984; Ross, 1988; Brennan et al., 1992). Although not been shown to be due to the vaccine (Griffith, 1989), concern over these serious reactions, although rare, and the subsequent reduction in use of the vaccine due to the lack of public confidence since the mid 1970s, has encouraged work on a defined-component or acellular vaccine with fewer side effects (Robinson et al., 1985a). In addition, the whole-cell vaccine fails to confer lasting immunity and may not decrease disease transmission or prevent infection, thus protecting against the disease rather than the infection.

Sato et al. (1984) co-purified PT and FHA, inactivated the PT with formaldehyde, and developed the first acellular vaccines which have been used
in Japan since 1981. Adverse reactions were found to be less frequent than with the whole-cell vaccine, though the children were immunised only when they had reached the age of two. To characterise further the Japanese vaccines two were tested in controlled field trials in Sweden during 1986 to 1987. One was a two component vaccine containing pertussis toxoid (PTd) and FHA (JNIH-6, National Institute of Health in Japan) and the other was a monocomponent vaccine consisting only of PTd (JNIH-7). The two-component vaccine provided better long-term protection against pertussis than the monocomponent vaccine (Storsaeter and Olin, 1992). Protection, however, appeared to be lower than that experienced with conventional whole-cell vaccines. Although it had been a double-blind trial with placebos, the whole cell vaccine had not been examined simultaneously, reliance instead being placed on historical comparisons. For a better comparison, acellular and whole-cell vaccines need to be compared at the same time (Brennan et al., 1992).

A further concern was the reversion to toxicity noted with the formalin-inactivated PTd (Storsaeter and Olin, 1992). As a result, investigations have been made to genetically manipulate the PT operon to produce a non-toxic immunogen. To remove enzymatic activity, critical amino acids in the S1 subunit were identified and the gene subjected to in vitro site-specific mutagenesis to give codon changes. The PTd holotoxin was then assembled in vitro (Burnette et al., 1992) or the wild-type toxin operon of *B. pertussis* was altered to produce S1 mutants by homologous recombination to create *B. pertussis* strains that secrete fully assembled non-toxic PT analogues (Rappuoli et al., 1991). Both sets of analogues have been shown to protect mice from both intracerebral and aerosol challenges. Rappuoli et al. (1991) have tested the mutant toxin in adult volunteers, confirming its safety and high immunogenicity. In addition, after combination with diphtheria and tetanus toxoids, the products have been tested in children and infants. Initial results show that the local and systemic reactions induced by the new vaccines are reduced dramatically and that they are...
antigenically superior to whole-cell vaccines (Rappuoli et al., 1992b). As an alternative, the *B. pertussis* strain producing the non-toxic form of PT could be used in the form of a whole-cell vaccine, along with diphtheria and tetanus toxoids. This would induce the same immunity as the conventional vaccine and enable antibodies to other *B. pertussis* virulent factors to be stimulated (Marsili et al., 1992).

The move towards an acellular vaccine has been enhanced by the identification with greater certainty of those antigens which can induce a protective immune response (Robinson et al., 1985a). In the UK, an acellular vaccine composed of separately purified and formaldehyde-detoxified PT, FHA, AGG2 and AGG3 has been developed. The vaccine was protective in mice challenged intranasally with *B. pertussis*. It also produced only low reactogenicity in human adult volunteers and induced high antibody responses to FHA, PT and agglutinogens (Rutter et al., 1988; Robinson and Ashworth 1988; Hambleton et al., 1988).

In addition to the *B. pertussis*-specific antigens used above, pertactin (69kDa) is now also being included in some vaccines. A comparison of the serological responses to 13 acellular pertussis vaccines containing various combinations of five antigens has been made. The vaccines were given to infants at 2, 4 and 6 months. All preparations generated antibodies at levels equivalent to or greater than two licensed whole-cell products and had substantially reduced reactogenicity (Zealey et al., 1992). A vaccine composed of all five of these antigens along with diphtheria and tetanus toxoids is currently being tested in Sweden, for the results to be examined in 1995 (Englund et al., 1992; Zealey et al., 1992). The ultimate aim is a new, defined, well-characterised, non-reactogenic, and efficacious acellular vaccine.
1.7. VARIATION IN EXPRESSION OF VIRULENCE FACTORS IN
B. PERTUSSIS.

Establishment of a role for B. pertussis virulence factors in disease is complicated by the variation in their expression by several mechanisms.

1.7.1. Serotype variation.

Stanbridge and Preston (1974) observed variants of B. pertussis isolates which had independently lost or gained agglutinogens 2 or 3. This serotype variation was at frequencies of $10^{-3}$ to $10^{-4}$. The phenomenon also occurs in experimental animals in vivo (Preston et al., 1980) and in the child (Preston and Stanbridge, 1972). It is believed that serotype variation may aid survival of the pathogen in hosts which lack immunity to the new variant. Immunisation of mice with a purified fimbrial AGG exerts a selective pressure against organisms expressing the homologous AGG (Robinson et al., 1989b). Work by Willems et al. (1990) and Mooi et al. (1990) indicates that serotype variation in B. pertussis may be due to single/small nucleotide insertion(s) or deletion(s) mutations in the cytosine-rich regulatory region upstream of the agglutinogen subunit genes.

1.7.2. Antigenic modulation.

Originally the term antigenic modulation was introduced by Lacey (1960) for the phenotypic changes in the expression of B. pertussis virulence determinants. He reported that ionic changes in the growth environment could cause a reversible antigenic transition in B. pertussis. Growth on NaCl-containing media or on BG agar at 37°C produced the virulent, or X-mode phenotype, whereas growth on MgSO₄-containing media, or on BG agar at 25°C, produced the avirulent, or C-mode phenotype. Subsequently, Pusztai and Joo (1967) observed that antigenic modulation was induced by increasing the concentration of the growth factor, nicotinic acid, in the medium. During antigenic modulation,
the expression of several virulence-associated determinants of *B. pertussis* are lost; PT (Wardlaw *et al.*, 1976), FHA, HLY (Lacey, 1960), agglutinogens, AC (McPheat *et al.*, 1983), X-mode specific OMPs, X-OMPs (Parton and Wardlaw, 1975) and DNT (Livey *et al.*, 1978).

Idigbe *et al.* (1981) suggested that modulation could be explained by the selective destruction of virulence factors. However, Robinson *et al.* (1983) and Brownlie *et al.* (1985) found no inactivation of virulence factors, but rather that further synthesis was repressed. Brownlie *et al.* (1985) examined expression of PT, AC and X-OMPs during modulation. There was never an instance where one property was lost independently of the others. This is consistent with the hypothesis (Wardlaw and Parton, 1979) that a common regulatory mechanism governs the loss of these components.

1.7.3. Phase variation in *B. pertussis*.

The term phase variation was introduced for the genotypic changes in the expression of *B. pertussis* virulence determinants with laboratory passage of the bacterium (Leslie and Gardner, 1931). They described phase variation as a step-wise degradation through four distinct antigenic phases; I, fully virulent and toxic, to IV being relatively non-toxic. The phase I/phase IV classification system is still in use to denote the extremes of phase types. Weiss and Falkow (1984) introduced the more descriptive designations, "virulent phase" and "avirulent phase" as concise terms for the potential of the bacterium to cause disease when expressing all or none respectively of the virulence-associated properties. Other workers proposed events to be more complicated, with intermediate stages, in addition to the four consecutive stages (Standfast, 1951). Parker (1976, 1979) suggested that the stages were due to random accumulation of point mutations whereas Goldman *et al.* (1984) favoured an ordered multistep process. Alternatively, traits were shown to be lost and gained in a single step event (Weiss and Falkow, 1984).
During phase variation, *B. pertussis* strains lose the same virulence-associated antigens as lost during antigenic modulation. The avirulent variant produced by phase variation has an increased resistance to certain antibiotics (Bannatyne and Cheung, 1984) and to increased levels of fatty acids in the growth media (Peppier and Schrumpf, 1984), enabling it to grow on media which will not support the growth of the virulent phase organism e.g. media not supplemented with charcoal, blood, starch or cyclodextrin. Strains lose their virulence at frequencies ranging from $10^{-3}$ to $10^{-6}$ (Gross et al., 1989). The transition from avirulent strain to virulent is not as freely reversible as with antigenic modulation, although revertants have been reported at low frequencies (Weiss and Falkow, 1984; Stibitz et al., 1989).

1.7.4. Modulation and phase variation in vivo.

The avirulent phase or C-mode may represent a pathologically dormant state associated with later stages of infection (Kasuga et al., 1954) and in carriers, particularly adults (Lacey 1960; Weiss and Falkow 1984). There is evidence to suggest that phase variation and antigenic modulation are not just *in vitro* artifacts (Kasuga et al., 1954; Lacey, 1960). Kasuga et al. (1954) isolated avirulent phase organisms during the progress of the disease when patients were periodically cultured for *B. pertussis* during the course of an infection. Lacey (1960) observed that most people who were convalescent from whooping cough produced sera that would agglutinate an X-mode suspension of *B. pertussis*, but that a small percentage produced sera capable of agglutinating a C-mode suspension. These latter sera were from adults with mild coughs and nasopharyngeal swabs positive for up to 5 months. This suggested that the production of C-mode antigens was associated with growth in an environment not encountered in the acute phase of infection. Robinson et al. (1986) observed that C-mode cells adhere less well to mammalian cells suggesting that antigenic
modulation may aid onward transmission to other susceptible hosts during later stages of the disease. Avirulent bacteria could persist without causing disease in an infected individual, in much the same way as the normal flora persists in a human host. Such individuals could serve as a reservoir for the bacteria until a phase switch back to the virulent stage occurs and the bacteria become able to initiate new infections in susceptible hosts (Weiss and Falkow, 1984).

Virulent *B. pertussis* has the ability to invade and survive in human macrophages (Saukkonen *et al.*, 1991; Friedman *et al.*, 1992) and HeLa 229 cells (Ewanowich *et al.*, 1989). Internalisation and intracellular survival is virulence dependent (Ewanowich *et al.*, 1989, Friedman *et al.*, 1992). The intracellular population may be a reservoir from which virulent bacteria can emerge later in the course of the infection (Saukkonen *et al.*, 1991).

1.7.5. Model for modulation and phase variation in *Bordetella*.

Wardlaw and Parton (1979) hypothesised that the simultaneous loss of virulence factors during modulation and phase variation could be due to a common regulatory mechanism lying at the root of these phenomena. Weiss *et al.* (1983) demonstrated that a single Tn5 insertion caused the simultaneous loss of FHA, PT, AC, HLY, and DNT providing evidence that a single genetic locus, named *vir*, controls the expression of virulence factors. The mutant Vir⁻ strain also had decreased sensitivity to erythromycin and was comparable to the spontaneous avirulent variants selected by resistance to erythromycin. However it differed from phase IV strains as it was unable to grow on nutrient agar (Weiss and Falkow, 1984). Lax (1985) suggested that phase variation could result from random mutation in the control region, followed by selection due to the environment.

Weiss *et al.* (1983) suggested that a trans-acting function, inactivated by Tn5-insertion, was required for the expression of certain virulence factors. This was confirmed by Stibitz *et al.* (1989) using a replacement vector which, when
transferred to *B. pertussis*, enabled exchange between chromosomal DNA and homologous DNA cloned in the vector. Using this system, the genetic defect in several avirulent phase variants was mapped to the same region in the *vir* locus. This region was cloned and sequenced for both virulent and avirulent phase variants. A stretch of six cytosine bases occurred in virulent phase variants whereas in all avirulent phase variants studied this was increased to seven bases. Thus one mechanism for phase variation in *B. pertussis* would seem to be accounted for by a frame-shift mutation at an unstable stretch of cytosines in the *vir* gene (Stibitz *et al.*, 1989, Arico *et al.*, 1989). The cytosine-rich region preceding the fimbrial structural genes could have a similar function in switching on and off fimbrial gene expression. Monack *et al.* (1989a) reported that phase variants of *B. bronchiseptica* arise by spontaneous deletions (of 50-500 bp) in the *vir* locus, illustrating a further mechanism of phase variation.

Weiss and Falkow (1984) proposed that the product(s) of the *vir* gene acts as a positive effector for the expression of virulence-associated genes; turning on the transcription of many genes by interacting with their promoters. Modulation could then be due to environmental signals such as sulphate anion, nicotinic acid or low temperature influencing the expression of the *vir* locus and consequently the virulence-associated genes. The *vir* gene locus has been cloned by Brown and Parker (1987), Brownlie *et al.* (1988), Stibitz *et al.* (1988) and McGillivray *et al.* (1989). The *vir* locus has now been renamed *bvg* (*Bordetella* virulence gene) and was reported by Arico *et al.* (1989) to encode three proteins BvgA, BvgB and BvgC. Further analysis of the sequence showed only two open reading frames to be present; BvgB and BvgC were renamed BvgS. The predicted protein products of *bvgA* and *bvgS* share homology with a family of prokaryotic regulatory proteins that respond to environmental stimuli and are members of two-component sensory transduction systems. A typical signal transduction system comprises two proteins, sensor and regulator. By analogy, BvgS is a sensory transmembrane protein possibly with kinase activity and BvgA is a
transcriptional control factor that, probably when phosphorylated, activates gene expression. Environmental signals are recognised by BvgS, and then transmitted to BvgA, a positive regulator of transcription. The bvg locus has been shown to be structurally similar in B. pertussis, B. parapertussis and B. bronchiseptica (Arico et al., 1991), but B. avium contains only DNA homologous to the bvgS gene (Gentry-Weeks et al., 1991).

Roy et al. (1990) have shown that BvgA transactivates the fhaB gene of B. pertussis cloned in E. coli. The regulatory regions found upstream of fhaB and bvgA, involved in binding BvgA, both contain the sequence TTTCCTA. This sequence is part of an inverted repeat upstream of fhaB and a direct repeat upstream of bvgA (Roy and Falkow, 1991). Homologous sequences were not apparent upstream of other bvg-activated genes, such as the ptx operon and the cya operon. This suggested that the mechanism for transcriptional regulation of the other bvg-activated genes is complex and may require regulatory factors in addition to the bvgAS gene products. Gross and Rappuoli (1988) reported that two tandem 20-bp repeats upstream from the start site of transcription are necessary for pertussis toxin promoter activity and bvg-regulated gene expression. Huh and Weiss (1991) found two similar repeats upstream of the ACT gene but could not find them in the FHA or bvg promoter region. A B. pertussis protein was examined which specifically binds to the promoter regions of pertussis toxin and adenylate cyclase toxin genes and was found to be a 23kD protein, distinct from BvgA but regulated by the bvg operon. Fig. 1.4 shows a model for Bvg activation of virulence loci. Scarlato et al. (1990) have studied the regulation of expression of the bvg locus in B. pertussis. The control of transcription of the bvg locus is mediated by a 350-bp upstream sequence that contains five promoters.

Knapp and Mekalanos (1988) described a locus, mod, whose product was thought to act as a sensory protein for environmental signals, controlling expression of the vir gene. Miller et al. (1992) have now shown that mod-1 is a
Fig. 1.4. Model of Bvg activation of virulence factor expression.

A dimer of BvgS phosphorylating BvgA would induce transcription of fha and bvg directly and either induce transcription (as shown here) of 23 kD locus or change the 23 kD protein from an inactive to an active state. The 23 kD protein is shown as being regulated by both transcription and phosphorylation (as speculated by Melton and Weiss (1993). The 23kD then activates transcription of pertussis and adenylate cyclase toxin. Redrawn from Melton and Weiss (1993).

(A model of inactivation of the Bvg system is not shown. In such a model, the BvgS would be unable to dimerize and phosphorylate itself. BvgS monomers would be unable to phosphorylate BvgA, and transcription from bvg-regulated loci would cease.)
mutant allele of \textit{bvgS}. Further more, Knapp and Mekalanos (1988) used Tn\textit{phoA} to detect a number of genes which were positively regulated or activated by the \textit{vir} locus, \textit{vir}-activated genes (\textit{vag}) loci; and several genes which were repressed by the same mechanism, \textit{vir}-repressed genes (\textit{vrg}) loci. Beattie \textit{et al.} (1992) have provided evidence by mutation that one \textit{vrg} gene may play an important part in the virulence of \textit{B. pertussis}, but the nature of the \textit{vrg} gene products are at present unknown. Coordinate regulation of virulence gene expression by BvgA and BvgS appears to involve direct control at the \textit{fhaB} and \textit{bvgAS} promoters and indirect control of other promoters via a cascade of different trans-acting transcription factors. Thus some \textit{vag} and \textit{vrg} genes appear to be controlled by additional regulatory components, which in turn, are dependent on \textit{bvgAS} for their own expression.

In \textit{B. bronchiseptica}, motility and the synthesis of flagellins has been shown to be negatively controlled by the \textit{bvgAS} locus (Akerley \textit{et al.}, 1992). Environmental signals which decrease (modulate) the expression of \textit{bvg}-activated genes lead to flagellum production and motility in \textit{B. bronchiseptica}. Wild-type (Bvg\textsuperscript{+}) strains are motile and produce peritrichous flagella only in the presence of modulating signals, whereas Bvg\textsuperscript{-} strains are motile in the absence of modulators. In \textit{B. avium}, motility is also influenced by the modulating signals that affect virulence factor expression in other bordetellae although the effect is not as pronounced as in \textit{B. bronchiseptica}. Nicotinic acid for example, does not induce motility (Akerley \textit{et al.}, 1992; Jackwood \textit{et al.}, 1991). Motility represents the first example of a phenotype found in wild-type \textit{B. bronchiseptica} strains that is negatively-controlled by the \textit{bvgAS}-encoded sensory apparatus. Although a regulatory link between the \textit{bvgAS} locus and motility has been shown by Akerley \textit{et al.} (1992), the exact mechanism of negative control remains to be established. They suggest that the active form of BvgA, resulting from phosphorylation by BvgS, binds to motility-associated promoter sequences to inhibit transcription. Modulation by
environmental signals would induce motility by decreasing the amount of active repressor. Alternatively, a more complex mechanism may be present. Scarlato et al. (1991) and Rappuoli et al. (1992a) have suggested that *B. pertussis* has evolved a system of responding to environmental changes in stages which are met first on entry into the host and then during subsequent spread throughout the respiratory tract.

1.8. FURTHER MODELS FOR VARIATION IN *BORDETELLA*.

Other mechanisms that cause variation in other bacteria have been described including DNA methylation; repeat sequences and DNA rearrangement, in particular the inversion of DNA segments.

1.8.1. DNA methylation.

*E. coli* contains two site-specific DNA methylases. The methylase encoded by the *dam* gene (Dam methylase) transfers a methyl group from S-adenosyl-methionine to the N⁶ position of the adenine residues in the sequences GATC (Hattman et al., 1978). The other methylase is encoded by the *dcm* gene (Dcm methylase). It methylates the internal cytosine residues in the sequences CCAGG and CCTGG (May and Hattman, 1975) at the C⁵ position. These methylases are of interest here for two reasons. First, some or all of the sites for a restriction endonuclease may be resistant to cleavage when isolated from strains expressing the Dam or Dcm methylases. This occurs because methylation of particular residues within the recognition site of a restriction endonuclease will prevent cleavage, and if the methylase recognition site overlaps the endonuclease recognition site, one of these residues may be methylated. For example, DNA isolated from *dam*⁺ *E. coli* is completely resistant to cleavage by *MboI*, which cleaves at GATC sites.

The second reason for these methylases to be of interest is that methylation has been shown to be involved in phase variation. For example Dam
methylation controls expression of *E. coli* pyelonephritis-associated pili (Pap) where at least four proteins are involved. The DNA methylation site is located within a protein-binding domain, resulting in methylated and non-methylated DNA states that modulate gene expression by affecting regulatory protein-DNA interactions. Thus *E. coli* cells can express different types of pili which mediate their attachment to a variety of host tissues (Blyn *et al.*, 1990; van der Woude *et al.*, 1992). Norton Hughes and Johnson (1990) also found fundamental differences in DNA methylation among members of the genus *Borrelia*. Dam methylation has also been shown to affect the frequency of transposition where Tn10-promoted DNA rearrangements are more frequent in *dam*^-^ *E. coli* (Roberts *et al.*, 1985). This is the result of the absence of methylation at two GATC sites lying within the transposase gene promoter and the inner terminus of IS10. It has also been suggested that methylation might modulate the activity of other prokaryotic transposable elements such as Tn5/IS50, but not IS1 and Tn3 which transpose at equal frequencies in both *dam*^+^ and *dam*^-^ hosts and which lack *dam* methylation sites in critical regions. It has been suggested that specific growth conditions might lead to under-methylation and hence to activation of transposition. Proposed roles for Dam methylation including DNA repair and gene expression have been reviewed by Barras and Marinus, 1989.

In contrast, the biological function of 5-methyl-cytosine in CC(A/T)GG sites is not well understood. *E. coli dcm* mutants show no detectable phenotype. However, the spontaneous deamination of 5-methylcytosine results in thymine-guanine mismatches, which might give rise to mutations by C to T transitions (Coulondre *et al.*, 1978). Dcm methylation has been measured in DNA from a wide range of bacteria. In contrast to Dam methylation, which occurs in all of the family Enterobacteriaceae, and many other bacteria, Dcm methylation has been found only in those genera of the family Enterobacteriaceae closest to *Escherichia: Shigella, Citrobacter, Salmonella,* and *Klebsiella* (Gomez-Eichelmann *et al.*, 1991). *Bordetella* DNA was not examined in this
The expression of genes in *Bordetella* could be altered by Dam and Dcm methylation to affect phase variation. The methylation state of *Bordetella* phase variants was examined by Goldman *et al.* (1987) whose results suggested that DNA of phase I *B. pertussis* strains was modified, possibly by methylation, making it resistant to certain restriction enzymes. MacGregor (1990) repeated this work but was unable to show the same variation in methylation.

### 1.8.2. Repeat DNA and insertion sequences.

A repeating element of DNA (1.053 kb) isolated from *B. pertussis* was sequenced revealing properties of an insertion sequence (IS) and was designated IS481 (McLafferty *et al.*, 1988). It was suggested the sequence could code for a transposase. A repeat DNA sequence of the same size was also shown to occur in at least 20 copies in *B. pertussis* (McPheat and McNally, 1987a). Sequence analysis of two of the twenty copies revealed that they were very closely related to the insertion sequence element IS481 and were subsequently labelled IS481v1 and IS481v2 (McPheat *et al.*, 1989a). Repeat sequences of 0.53 kb have also been identified and, although smaller than IS481, show considerable homology. They are thought to be present in 70-80 copies accounting for almost 1% of the bacterial genome (Park *et al.*, 1988). Another *B. pertussis* repeat DNA fragment (1.046 kb) has been cloned and sequenced revealing a close relatedness to IS481. It is believed to occur in 50-100 copies per cell with many of the copies arranged in tandem on the chromosome. These tandemly repeated sequence can be recognised by the distinct 1 kb fragment in ethidium bromide gels of *ClaI* digested *B. pertussis* chromosomal DNA. Though all these repeat sequences show considerable homology, small differences e.g. 12 bases difference between IS481 and the 1.046 kb repeat sequence, show that the sequences are not absolutely conserved.

The repeats IS481 (McLafferty *et al.*, 1988), 0.53 kb (Park *et al.*, 1988) and
1.046 kb (Glare et al., 1990) are in unknown locations in the genome. However, a repeated DNA sequence has been located 210 bp upstream of the start codon of the porin structural gene in B. pertussis (Li et al., 1991b). The B. pertussis repeated DNA sequences IS481v1 and IS481v2 are located close to at least two virulence genes. IS481v1 is located 3 kb upstream of the adenylate cyclase locus and IS481v2 is located immediately adjacent to the C-terminal end of the agglutinogen 2 fimbrial subunit gene (McPheat et al., 1989b).

IS481 and 0.53 kb repeats were not detected in B. parapertussis or B. bronchiseptica DNA (McLafferty et al., 1988; Park et al., 1988). IS481v1 and IS481v2 repeats were found to be absent in B. parapertussis, B. bronchiseptica (McPheat and McNally, 1987a) and in B. avium (McPheat and McNally, 1987b), although longer exposure revealed a homologous single copy band in BamHI-digested B. parapertussis DNA (1.45 kb) and two bands in BamHI-digested B. bronchiseptica DNA (1.45 kb, 10.1 kb) (McPheat and McNally, 1987a). Glare et al., (1990) found that after prolonged autoradiographic exposure (4 days) one or two bands were detected in B. bronchiseptica DNA but none in B. parapertussis DNA. Analysis of repetitive DNA in B. parapertussis revealed an insertion sequence element, designated IS1001 (van der Zee et al., 1993). The largest open reading frame showed homology with a putative transposase, designated TnpA, encoded by an insertion sequence element IS1096 found in Mycobacterium smegmatis. The insertion sequence was found in about 20 copies in all of the B. parapertussis strains analysed. An insertion sequence similar or identical to IS1001 was found in about five copies in B. bronchiseptica strains isolated from pigs and a rabbit. Neither B. pertussis nor B. bronchiseptica strains isolated from humans and dogs contained an IS1001-like element. Thus, repeated DNA segments, now recognised as insertion sequences, are found throughout the Bordetella genome.

McLafferty et al. (1988) identified a different repeat sequence adjacent to one copy of the repetitive DNA sequence, IS481. This was present in four copies
in *B. pertussis* and nine copies in *B. parapertussis*, suggesting that more than one kind of repetitive DNA sequence is present in the genomes of *Bordetella* (McLafferty et al., 1988). Alsheikhly and Lofdahl (1989) also identified a repeat sequence, different from IS481, within the genome of *B. pertussis*. This consisted of an inverted repeat sequence surrounding a 200 bp central segment. It was present in more than one copy in *B. parapertussis* and also in *B. bronchiseptica*. They suggested that this IS-like element exists as an integral entity in just a few locations within the genome, but that the inverted repeat sequence is present in multiple copies. They also suggested that low or no toxin production by bordetellae may not only be due to point mutations, as suggested by Arico et al. (1987) but may be also due to DNA rearrangements involving repeat sequences.

It was suggested that a potential binding site for the *bvg* gene-associated products was a set of tandem repeats upstream of the PT operon (Locht and Keith, 1986). Later, Gross and Rappuoli (1988) identified the regulatory region involved in the transcription of the PT operon as a 170 bp sequence upstream of the start site of transcription. A 21 bp repeated sequence in this region was proposed as the binding site for the trans-activating factor(s).

McPheat and McNally (1987a) suggested that DNA rearrangements at the sites of repeat DNA sequences might be involved in the regulation of virulence factors in *Bordetella*. Analysis of *B. pertussis* chromosomal DNA isolated from AGG2 serotype variants and from avirulent phase variants revealed no rearrangements around either of these two insertion sequences (McPheat et al., 1989b), although, DNA rearrangements had been observed at other uncharacterised loci for phase variants of *B. pertussis* strain 18323 (McPheat et al., 1987b). Repetitive sequences have been found to be associated with a number of virulence associated traits including the genes for *E. coli* heat-labile toxin (Yamamoto and Yokota, 1981) and haemolysin (Hacker et al., 1983). The cholera toxin operon is flanked by tandem duplicated repeated DNA sequences (Goldberg and Mekalanos, 1986) and the *E. coli* heat-stable toxin by
inverted repeats of insertion sequence ISI which have been shown to transpose (So et al., 1979).

Insertion sequences are a class of mobile genetic elements and one of several types of repeated DNA sequences. They are discrete units of DNA capable of inserting themselves at multiple sites in the bacterial genome (Iida et al., 1983). They are classified as insertion sequences by several criteria: i) perfect or near perfect terminal inverted repeats of 10-40 bp; ii) two or three ORF's encoding transposition activity; iii) short duplication of target DNA at their insertion sites resulting in their being flanked by short direct repeats (2-12 bp) formed by the insertion of the IS element at its target site, the length but not sequence of the direct repeats being characteristic of each IS element; iv) they appear to encode only proteins that are involved in their own transposition, in contrast to transposons which carry drug and antibiotic resistance determinants. No significant DNA sequence homologies have been observed among different IS elements nor do their proteins bear any obvious amino acid homologies. The difference in the terminal inverted repeats of IS elements is thought to be specific for their transposition, where the inverted repeats act as the recognition sequences for the transposition enzymes, mutations within the sequences greatly affecting the mobility of the unit. It has been suggested that IS elements insert by creating a staggered cleavage in the target DNA at the insertion site. The short target DNA duplications would then reform by repair of the staggered ends for ligation with the IS element. If blunt rather than staggered cleavage were produced, there would be no duplications (Iida et al., 1983).

Alternative effects of the IS family have been seen in prokaryotic gene expression by insertional inactivation or transposition of regions flanked by copies of the IS. IS elements appear to have been retained by bacteria where they appear to be important in mediating chromosomal rearrangements such as deletions, inversions and duplications and by altering the expression of adjacent genes. Such rearrangements may help organisms to adapt to new environmental
If IS elements are involved in evolutionary processes, it has been suggested the large copy number of the IS481 element in the most evolutionary advanced species of *Bordetella* might be important (McLafferty *et al.*, 1988). There may be an important functional role for *B. pertussis* in aiding its adaptation to new environmental conditions by controlling phase variation and virulence determinants. There is at present, however, no direct evidence for this.

### 1.8.3. Invertible DNA.

The reversibility of virulence factor expression might be accounted for by the *bvg* locus or its products being subject to regulation. Foxall *et al.* (1990) proposed that expression might be controlled by an invertible region of DNA in *Bordetella* affecting *bvg* expression. The homology was shown between *Bordetella* DNA and a *hin* region DNA probe by DNA hybridisation. These results were corroborated by MacGregor (1990). The DNA invertase system in other bacteria will now be reviewed.

### 1.9. DNA INVERSION IN OTHER BACTERIA.

#### 1.9.1. The DNA invertase, Din, family.

Several invertible DNA mechanisms are very closely related, forming a single family of invertible DNA systems known as din (DNA inversion). The DNA invertases mediate "genetic switches" (Plasterk and van de Putte, 1984; Glasgow *et al*., 1989) where inversion of a DNA segment, flanked by inversely repeated recombination sites, can switch expression between two alternative sets of genes. In the reactions catalysed by the DNA invertases Hin (*S. typhimurium*), Gin (phage Mu) and Cin (phage P1), the factor for inversion stimulation, FIS, stimulates recombination by binding to an enhancer sequence. Within the enhancer, two FIS dimers bind to two 15 bp consensus sequences and induce bending of the DNA. Current models propose that the enhancer-FIS complex organises a specific synapse, either through direct interaction with the invertase...
protein, or by modelling the substrate into a configuration suitable for recombination (Finkel and Johnson, 1992). Interestingly, cellular concentrations of FIS vary tremendously under different growth conditions. This might have important regulatory implications for the physiological role of FIS in these different reactions. One feature of FIS-binding sites is a propensity for A/T rich regions flanking the core, consisting of runs of 3-6 As or Ts, flanking the core. The hin and cin enhancers contain two FIS-binding sites whereas the gin enhancer contains three, although only two are required to stimulate inversion.

The Hin enhancer consists of a 63 bp DNA sequence containing two binding sites for FIS. During the inversion reaction, the recombinational enhancer becomes physically associated with the two recombinational sites. This nucleoprotein complex, called an invertasome, has been visualised by electron microscopy. The assembly of the invertasome is believed to initiate with the joining of recombinase dimers bound at the two recombination sites followed by the incorporation of the Fis-bound enhancer DNA segment to form a branched structure on supercoiled DNA (Finkel and Johnson, 1992). It has been proposed that a confirmational change in the recombinase, induced upon assembly of the enhancer into the recombinational complex, may weaken the recombinational contacts allowing subunit, hence DNA strand, exchange (Johnson, 1991). Fig. 1.5. shows a schematic representation of the molecular process of the Hin-mediated inversion reaction. FIS was originally discovered because of its critical role in promoting site-specific recombination in bacteriophages. Recent discoveries have shown a role for this protein in the transcription of operons whose products are central to protein synthesis with the need for rapidly changing expression. Finkel and Johnson (1992) have speculated that it may have an important role in mediating rapid responses in cell growth as a function of environmental fluctuations.

Within the Din family, the hin invertase system of S. typhimurium is involved in flagellar phase variation. The gin system of bacteriophage Mu and
Fig. 1.5. Schematic representation of the molecular process of the Hin-mediated DNA inversion reaction.

The H region in the chromosome of *S. typhimurium* is shown. Hin binds to *hix* recombination sites as a dimer while Fis binds independently to each domain of the recombinational enhancer as a dimer (*Binding*).

Interaction between Hin dimers bound to two *hix* sites brings two recombination sites close together (*Pairing of hix sites*).

A productive synaptic complex is formed at the enhancer between paired *hix* and Hin complex and Fis (*Invertasome formation*).

Hin cleaves in the centre of each *hix* site followed by strand exchange and religation (*Cleavage and strand exchange*).

The resulting recombination product has inverted the genetic information between the *hix* sites. *P_H2*, promoter for the *H2* gene. (Redrawn from Lim and Simon, 1992).
H2 on:

Hin Binding

Pairing of hix sites

Invertasome formation

Cleavage and strand exchange

H2 off:
the *cin* system of bacteriophage P1 are both involved in determining the host range of the phages via the expression of different tail fibre proteins, while the *pin* system of *E. coli* has no known function. Sequence homology to these has also been shown with *min*, a DNA segment on the *E. coli* plasmid p15B, and *pinB* and *pinD* of *Shigella*. *Moraxella bovis* exhibits pilin variation, and homology to the inverterase inverted repeats and enhancer region have been detected although there was no significant sequence similarity to the invertases. The Bin protein from *Staphylococcus aureus* also shows homology to the Din proteins and was originally thought to be an inverterase by sequence analysis, although no such function has been established.

1.9.1.a. *Hin* DNA inversion in *S. typhimurium*.

*S. typhimurium* undergoes variation between two serospecific flagellar filaments, H1 or H2, and can switch reversibly between the two states effecting a phase change and antigenic variation simultaneously. New symbols for the flagellar structural genes *H1* and *H2* are *fliC* and *fliB* respectively as suggested by Iino *et al.* (1988) though both old and new terms are still in use. The older symbols of *H1* and *H2* are used here. The rate of this phase change is of the order of $10^{-3}$-$10^{-4}$ per cell division. The molecular mechanism for the switch involves the reversible inversion of a 995 bp sequence of the *S. typhimurium* chromosome that is bounded by 14 bp inverted repeat sequences. Inversion is mediated by the *hin* gene product which is encoded within the segment and is expressed in either orientation. The *hin* gene product catalyses site-specific recombination between the inverted repeats at either end of the invertible segment and to cause inversion (Zieg *et al.*, 1977; Silverman *et al.*, 1979a; Simon *et al.*, 1980).

The invertible region carries a promoter (P) and in one orientation (phase H2) the promoter directs transcription of the *H2* gene, leading to synthesis of H2 flagellin, and of the *rh1* (*fliA*) gene which encodes a trans-acting
protein repressor that represses expression of the $HI$ gene (Silverman et al., 1979b). In the opposite orientation (phase $H1$) the promoter cannot read through either $H2$ or $rh1$. Therefore $H2$ flagellin is not made and the repression of $H1$ expression is relieved. The alternative flagellin gene $HI$ is located distantly from the $H2$ and the invertible control region (Saunders, 1986) whose nucleotide sequence has been determined (Silverman et al., 1981; Fig. 3.2.). The site-specific inversion also involves protein HU as well as Hin and FIS. HU is a non-specific DNA binding protein possibly enabling bending of the DNA (Johnson and Bruist, 1989). The enhancer and the DNA supercoiling rotate the DNA strands subsequent to double stranded cleavage by $hin$ within both recombination sites. Ligation of recombinant configuration results in inversion of the intervening DNA (Johnson and Bruist, 1989). Fig. 1.6. shows a schematic representation of the genetic rearrangement controlling $S. typhimurium$ flagellar phase transition.

The DNA sequences comprising the $H2$ locus (invertible region and $H2$ structural gene) have been compared with the Mu phage sequences and the sequences including and 5' to the $HI$ and $hag$ genes (Szekely and Simon, 1982). The homology shown suggested to Silverman and Simon (1983) that the $H2$ region was a fusion containing sequences from two different sources. There was marked homology between $H2$, $HI$, and $hag$ gene sequences, and this close similarity extended for approximately 100 bp from the N-terminus of these genes into the 5' noncoding region. At this point, there was an abrupt discontinuity where the $H2$ locus sequences diverged sharply from the $HI$ and $hag$ sequences, which continued to resemble each other. Approximately 300 bp from the N-terminus of the $H2$ gene, considerable homology with Mu sequences was detected. This region of homology with Mu (shown in Fig. 1.7.) extended for 700 bp, the IR(L)-$hin$ region of $Salmonella$ having extensive homology with the IR(R)-$gin$ region of Mu suggesting it was probably derived from a $gin$-like sequence. A point approximately 100 bp 5' from the start of the $H2$ gene
Fig. 1.6. Genetic rearrangement controlling *S. typhimurium* flagellar phase transition.

Inversion of a region of DNA of approximately 1000 bp adjacent to the *H2* operon alternatively couples and uncouples a promoter element. When the promoter is coupled to the operon *H2*, flagellin is synthesized as well as the product of the *rhI* gene that represses *H1* expression (i; *H2* on, *H1* off). When the promoter is uncoupled from the *H2* operon, no *rhI* gene product is synthesized, and the *H1* gene is expressed (iii; *H2* off, *H1* on). IR(L) and IR(R) are the cis-acting sites in inverted repeat configurations in which a reciprocal recombination event resulting in inversion takes place. The *hin* gene product is encoded by a sequence within the inversion region and is required for inversion. The fate of DNA sequences rearranged by inversion can be followed by referring to the filled areas of the IR boxes. Note that IR(L) and IR(R) are defined for the *H2* (on) position. (Redrawn from Silverman and Simon, 1983).
marked a boundary between transposon-like and \textit{HI}-like sequences. Thus, the IR(R) sequence in the phase variation system was embedded in and probably was derived from \textit{HI}-like sequences. In fact, the sequence -ATCAA- which was part of the 14-bp IR(R) recognition sequence was conserved in the same relative position in \textit{HI} and \textit{hag} (Silverman and Simon, 1983).

These sequence relationships suggested to Silverman and Simon (1983) a process for the evolution of the phase variation system. Hypothetical steps in the evolutionary process have been outlined in Fig. 1.8. The IR(L)-\textit{hin} recombinase could be derived from a transposon-like unit that inserted adjacent to an ancestral \textit{HI} gene. A low frequency recombinational event at a site adjacent to that of the flagellin gene could capture the promoter sequence of that gene. Subsequent repair or recombinational processes similar to those of gene conversion could lead to homogenisation of the sequence immediately adjacent to the recombination site, with the resultant generation of a functional IR(L)-IR(R) site pair. The consequences of such a promoter capture would be on-off switching of flagellin synthesis mediated by the recombinase function. The phase variation system could have developed as a result of a number of steps, including the insertion of a mobile element adjacent to an ancestral \textit{HI} gene and the capture of the \textit{HI} promoter by a recombinational function that was part of the mobile element.

1.9.1.b. \textbf{Gin DNA inversion in bacteriophage Mu.}

In bacteriophage Mu, a switch in host range is caused by site-specific inversion of the 3 kb G segment (van de Putte \textit{et al.}, 1980). Inversion provides the means to alternate the expression of two sets of genes that are involved in tail fibre biosynthesis (Grundy and Howe, 1984). The recombination sites are 34bp long and are arranged as inverted repeats (Plasterk \textit{et al.}, 1983). The product of the gene, \textit{gin} (G inversion) which lies outside the G region, is responsible for the site specific recombination that inverts the G region.
Fig. 1.7. Sequence relationships. At least two different sources contributed to the DNA sequence of the $H2$ region.

The $H2$ structural gene and a region approximately 100 bp N-terminal to the start of $H2$ has a high degree of DNA homology with the $HI$ region and with the $hag$ region in $E.coli$. This region extends inside the inversion region and includes the $H2$ gene promoter. Past this boundary, about 100 bp left of IR(R), the DNA sequence resembles that of the IR(R)-$gin$ region of Mu. IR boxes are not drawn to genetic scale. (Redrawn from Silverman and Simon, 1983.)

Fig. 1.8. Evolutionary considerations to account for the origin of sequences in the $H2$ gene switch.

A mobile genetic element similar to the TnA class of transposons inserted adjacent to an ancestral $HI$ gene (i, ii). Genetic alteration of a site between the $H1^*$ promoter and the $H1^*$ gene led to a functional recombination site similar to but in inverted configuration to the recombination site carried by the recombinase (iii). The recombinase function ($hin$) acting on the pairs of recombination sites inverts the region containing the $H2$ gene promoter (iv). The recombinase that originally was an integral part of a transposon now functions to regulate an unrelated gene system. (Redrawn from Silverman and Simon, 1983).
(i) Recombinase → Flanking Transposon

(ii) H1 → Promoter Capture

(iii) Hin → H2 (on) → Inversion

(iv) Hin → H2 (off)
Transcription and translation originates from a region that lies outside G through a protein-coding region called Sc (constant) and can lead to the production of alternative pairs of proteins. In one orientation a protein containing Sc fused to Sv (variable), and a second protein called U are made. These confer on Mu the ability to infect \textit{E. coli}. In the other orientation of G, proteins Sc-S' and U' are made which allow the phage to propagate on \textit{Citrobacter freundii} (Saunders, 1986). Fig. 1.9. shows a schematic representation of the genetic rearrangement in bacteriophage Mu.

1.9.1.c. Cin DNA inversion in bacteriophage P1.

Phage P1 has a similar invertible segment and site specific recombination mechanism that interchange with that of Mu. Phage P1 contains an invertible DNA segment of 4200 bp flanked by 640 bp inverted repeats (Hiestand-Nauer and Iida, 1983). The enzyme for P1 inversion is encoded by the \textit{cin} gene and also controls the host range of the phage. The proteins encoded by \textit{hin}, \textit{gin}, and \textit{cin} share 60-70\% amino acid sequence identity and have been shown to function on each other's DNA substrate. Differences in structure arise due to \textit{gin} and \textit{cin} DNA invertase genes being adjacent to the invertible DNA rather than being part of the structure as with \textit{hin} (Johnson and Bruist, 1989).

1.9.1.d. Pin DNA inversion in \textit{E. coli}.

\textit{E.coli} harbours a site-specific inversion system of the defective phage e14 (Greener and Hill, 1980). \textit{Pin}, the invertase gene, acts on the adjacent P region of invertible DNA. Pin has functional homology to the invertases of Mu and P1 and suppresses \textit{hin} mutations of \textit{Salmonella} (Kutsukake \textit{et al.}, 1985). As yet, no function has been ascribed to the invertible DNA. However it is known that the inversion determines the differential expression of at least one protein (Plasterk and van de Putte, 1984), although alteration in protein expression has not been correlated with any apparent change in the phenotype of \textit{E. coli}. 

39
Fig. 1.9. Mu host range variation determined by a genetic rearrangement.

The host range of the phage is determined by the presence of pairs of gene products in the infectious particle. If gene products S and U are present, the phage will infect *Escherichia coli* (i); if gene products S' and U' are present, the phage will infect *Citrobacter* and other enterobacteria (iii). The alteration in gene product synthesis is controlled by the inversion of a 3000-bp region that encodes an s, u operon and an s', u' operon in inverted configuration (ii). The promoter and a small part of the coding region lie outside the inversion region. In contrast to *S. typhimurium* phase variation, alteration of expression is by reversible coupling of different coding regions with a static promoter. As in Fig. 1.6, the cis-acting sites for inversion are marked IR(L) AND IR(R). These regions of inverted homology are longer than those of *Salmonella* phase variation (34 bp versus 14 bp). The gin gene, located outside the inversion region, encodes a protein required for inversion. (Redrawn from Silverman and Simon, 1983).
1.9.2. DNA inversions proposed to be part of the Din family.

1.9.2.a. Min DNA inversion in *E. coli* 15 T⁻.

The Min DNA inversion enzyme of plasmid p15B of *E. coli* 15T⁻ has been examined by lida *et al.* (1990). Plasmid p15B is a bacteriophage P1-related resident of *E. coli* 15T⁻. Both *E. coli* and P1 genomes contain a segment in which DNA inversion can occur, although these segments are not identical. Cloning of the Min DNA segment into a plasmid resulted in multiple DNA inversions of the 3.5 kb segment on the recombinant plasmid. The DNA inversion was therefore called Min. The *min* gene can complement the P1 *cin* recombinase gene. DNA sequence analysis of the *min* gene shows that Min is most closely related to the Pin recombinase of the e14 defective viral element on the *E. coli* K12 chromosome. The *min* gene contains a recombinational enhancer element which stimulates site-specific DNA inversion 300-fold.

1.9.2.b. Din DNA inversion in *Shigella*.

The invertible B segment DNA and *pinB* recombinase gene cloned from *Shigella boydii* are highly homologous to the phage Mu G invertible region and *gin* in size, organisation and nucleotide sequence of open reading frames (Tominaga *et al*., 1991). It is not known whether the invertible DNA segment B and recombinase *pinB* gene structure are part of a defective prophage derived from Mu-like phage or whether it is a progenitor of a phage like Mu. If the invertible B segment DNA and recombinase *pinB* gene are part of a prophage, the products of the ORFs on the B segment and its flanking region would presumably be tail fibre proteins concerned with host recognition (Tominaga *et al*., 1991).

1.9.2.c. DNA inversion in *Moraxella bovis*.

*M. bovis* EPP63 is able to produce two antigenically distinct pili named Q
and I (previously called beta and alpha). The phase variation between Q and I pilin gene expression is associated with the inversion of a 2.1 kb DNA fragment whose ends occur within the coding region of the expressed pilin gene (Marrs et al., 1988). Analysis of the beta-pilin gene revealed a stretch of 26 bases at the amino-terminal portion with homology to the left inverted repeat of the S. typhimurium flagellar hin control region. In addition, Fulks et al. (1990) found 50% sequence homology to the recombinational enhancer of bacteriophage P1. Two ORFs representing potential genes were also identified. One was a strong candidate for an invertase, piv, but there was no significant sequence homology to the Din family of invertases (Marrs et al., 1990).

1.9.2.d. Bin DNA inversion in S. aureus.

The nucleotide sequence of a staphylococcal plasmid gene "bin" was predicted to encode a protein homologous to proteins in the Din family (Rowland and Dyke, 1988). The staphylococcal invertible region (inv) was first characterised as a 2.2kb segment flanked by 650 bp inverted repeats. Although originally identified as an invertase, it was shown to be related to Tn3. Later work suggested that Bin is a homologue of Tn552 resolvase (a S. aureus beta-lactamase-containing transposon) rather than an invertase (Rowland and Dyke, 1989). This may therefore represent a link between invertases and the resolvases, where bin determines a resolvase which can occasionally mediate DNA inversion (Iida et al., 1990).

1.9.3. Transposons.

The Din family share sequence homology and mechanistic features with the resolvase family of recombinases, for example, TnpR of Tn3-class transposons (Glasgow et al., 1989). To enable recombination to occur, the transposons of the Tn3 family encode two specialised recombination systems. The first consists of the transposase protein, TnpA, which interacts with the two
ends of the transposon, to insert the entire molecule into the target. The second transposon recombination system, TnpR, and the recombination site, resolvase or res, resolves the recombination product into the two products. This second, site-specific recombination protein, TnpR shows amino acid sequence homology to the invertases previously mentioned. The structure of various transposons are shown in Fig. 1.10.

There is little similarity between the Tn3-type transposases and the other elements and no homology has been found between transposases and recombinases/topoisomerases. Most workers have suggested, on the basis of the common transposition mechanism, that the transposase catalytic activity resides in the C-terminal region of the transposase. A phylogenetic tree for the relationships among the resolvases/invertases is shown in Fig. 1.11. No formal derivation of a phylogeny for repeats or transposases has been reported. However, if the phylogenies are similar, it suggests that the transposases and resolvases have largely co-evolved and have not been subject to frequent reassortment (Sherratt, 1989).

1.10. AIMS OF RESEARCH.

A previous study had revealed homology between the hin region of S. typhimurium and a B. pertussis chromosomal DNA fragment. This study was designed to determine the identity of this homologous B. pertussis fragment and to determine whether the homology was due to an invertase sequence and, if so, what its function was in the B. pertussis genome. This study was to include the other three Bordetella species in addition to B. pertussis. All four species chromosomal DNA were to be examined for evidence of differential methylation related to phase variation which had also been suggested by a previous study.
Fig. 1.10. Three classes of bacterial transposons.

(A). ISs and composite transposons. ISs range in size from about 750 bp to 1600 bp. They generally have a single transposase gene \((tnp)\). Composite transposons consist of a DNA segment (often with a phenotypic determinant such as a drug-resistance gene) flanked by two copies of an IS; the IS copies may be in the same or inverted orientations.

(B). Tn3-family transposons. \(tnpA\) and \(tnpR\) are the genes for transposase and the cointegrate resolvase respectively, \(res\) is the site of cointegrate resolution. Two subgroups have been distinguished and are exemplified by (i) Tn3 and (ii) Tn501. In these subgroups the DNA segment that contains \(tnpR\) and its \(res\) site has adopted opposite orientations. The \(tnpA-(res-tnpR)\) segment is about 3800 bp in size. The remainder of the transposon may carry additional genetic markers (e.g. ampicillin resistance in Tn3, mercury resistance in Tn501).

(C). Mu. The whole genome is about 38 kb. The A and B genes are necessary for efficient transposition and replication. Near the right end lies a 3 kb invertible DNA segment (the G segment) and the \(gin\) gene; \(gin\) is related to the \(tnpR\) genes of Tn3 and Tn501 and encodes a site-specific recombinase that inverts the G segment. (Redrawn from Grindley and Reed, 1985).

Fig. 1.11. Phylogenetic tree derived by analysis of the primary structures of the site-specific recombinases or resolvases.

\(Res\) is carried on the \textit{Clostridium perfringes} plasmid pIP404. The RES protein is highly homologous to the resolvases of transposons as well as enzymes involved in site-specific DNA inversion. Phylogenetic analysis indicates a common descent for ten site-specific recombinases and showed the RES protein to be closest to the resolvase encoded by Tn917 from \textit{Streptococcus faecalis}. (Redrawn from Garnier et al., 1987)
CHAPTER 2

MATERIALS AND METHODS.
2.1 SOURCES OF MATERIALS AND CHEMICALS.

Unless stated otherwise, all chemicals were obtained from BDH Chemicals Ltd., Poole, U.K. and were of analytical reagent grade whenever possible. Distilled water (DW) was double distilled. Sterile distilled water (SDW) was from West Midlands Regional Sterile Supply Unit, Wolverhampton.

Amersham International, Bucks, U.K.:
(α-35S) dATP, 1000μCi/mM; (α-32P) dATP (aqueous), 400μCi/mM; (γ-32P) dATP (aqueous) 3000μCi/mM. Multiprime DNA labelling system.

Bio-Rad Laboratories, Watford, Herts., U.K.:
Acrylamide, methylene-bis acrylamide, "Zeta probe" nylon membrane.

Difco Laboratories, East Molesey, Surrey, U.K.:
Agar No.3, casamino acids, tryptone, yeast extract.

Gibco-BRL, Paisley, U.K.:
Agarose, ammonium persulphate, Bordet Gengou agar, caesium chloride, calf intestinal phosphatase (CIP), dialysis tubing, formamide, isopropylthio-β-D-galactoside (IPTG), lambda DNA, phenol, T4 DNA ligase and buffer, N,N,N',N'-tetramethylethylene-diamine (TEMED), urea (ultra-pure grade), DNA kilobase ladder.

May and Baker Ltd, Dagenham, UK.:
Diethyl ether.

Oxoid, Basingstoke, Hants.:
Cephalexin, nutrient agar, nutrient broth.
Sigma Chemical Company (UK) Ltd., Poole, Dorset, U.K.:
Ampicillin (sodium salt), ascorbic acid, bovine serum albumin (BSA pentax fraction V), 5-bromo-4-chloro-3-indolyl-β-D-galactoside (BCIG/X-gal), bromophenol blue, Brij 58, DL-dithiothreitol (DTT), EDTA, erythromycin, ethidium bromide, Ficoll, glucose, glutathione (reduced), glycerol, isoamyl alcohol, light mineral oil, low gelling temperature agarose (Type XI), lysozyme, L-proline, monosodium glutamate, nicotinic acid, polyethylene glycol (PEG Mr. 6000), polyvinylpyrrolidone, proteinase K, salmon sperm DNA, tetracycline, tris base, thiamine, xylene cyanol FF.

Stratech, Scientific Ltd, U.K.:
Gene clean II kit.

Tissue Culture Services Ltd, Buckingham, UK.:
Defibrinated horse blood.
2.2 MEDIA PREPARATION.

All media and sterile equipment used in this study were sterilized for 15 min at 121°C (15 lbs/in^2) before use.

**Bordetella growth.**

*Bordetella* strains were grown in 200 ml volumes of cyclodextrin liquid medium (Imaizumi *et al.*, 1983) consisting of three parts:- basal medium (with cyclodextrin), supplement and casamino acids.

**Basal medium.**

For one litre of medium:-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monosodium glutamate (L-glutamic acid)</td>
<td>10.70 g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L-proline</td>
<td>0.24 g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NaCl*</td>
<td>2.50 g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KH₂PO₄</td>
<td>0.50 g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KCl</td>
<td>0.20 g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MgCl₂·6H₂O</td>
<td>0.10 g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CaCl₂·2H₂O</td>
<td>0.02 g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tris base (Trizma)</td>
<td>1.5 g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heptakis (2,6-0-dimethyl) beta-cyclodextrin**</td>
<td>1.00 g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Distilled water was added and the pH adjusted to 7.4 with concentrated HCl, to give a final volume of 1 litre. The medium was then autoclaved and stored at room temperature. The ingredients for 5 litres were usually made in a total volume of 1 litre and stored as a 5 x stock.

* To grow *Bordetella* in the C-mode, the NaCl was replaced with MgSO₄, 2.45 g/l.

** The cyclodextrin was kindly supplied by Teijin Ltd, Tokyo, Japan.
Basal medium growth supplement.

- L-cysteine: 0.4 g
- FeSO₄·7H₂O: 0.1 g
- Niacin (nicotinic acid): 0.04 g
- Glutathione (reduced): 1.5 g
- Ascorbic acid: 4.0 g

Distilled water was added to a total volume of 100 ml and the medium filter-sterilized using 0.22 μm Millipore filters. The supplement was divided into 10ml aliquots and stored at -20 °C. The supplement was used at 10 ml per 1 litre basal medium.

Casamino acids.

Casamino acids, stock 25% (w/v) solution in distilled water was autoclaved separately and stored at room temperature. This solution was added to the medium to give 1% (v/v).

Bordet Gengou agar.

Bordet Gengou agar, BGA, 36 g, and glycerol, 1% (v/v, final) were added to distilled water to give a final volume of 850 ml. This was boiled to dissolve the solids and then autoclaved. The agar was allowed to cool to 45-50 °C before adding 150 ml of sterile warm (37°C) fresh defibrinated horse blood (Tissue Culture Services Ltd, Buckingham, U.K.). Overlay plates had a bottom agar of BGA without blood (12 ml) and a top layer BGA with blood (12 ml). This aided the visualisation of haemolysis.
E. coli growth.

**L broth medium (pH 7.4).**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Concentration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tryptone</td>
<td>10 g/l</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yeast Extract</td>
<td>5 g/l</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NaCl</td>
<td>10 g/l</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The pH was adjusted to pH (7.4) with 5M NaOH, 15 g/l Difco agar was added to solidify the medium when appropriate.

**Nutrient agar.**

Nutrient agar, NA (Oxoid) prepared using 28 g/l in distilled water.

Nutrient broth (No. 2 Oxoid) prepared as 14 g/l in distilled water.

**2 x YT (pH 7.4).**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Concentration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tryptone</td>
<td>16 g/l</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yeast Extract</td>
<td>10 g/l</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NaCl</td>
<td>5 g/l</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The pH was adjusted to 7.4 with 5M NaOH.

15 g/l Difco agar was added to solidify the medium when appropriate.
**Defined minimal medium, M9 (10x stock).**

- Na<sub>2</sub>HPO<sub>4</sub> 60.0 g/l
- KH<sub>2</sub>PO<sub>4</sub> 30.0 g/l
- NaCl 5.0 g/l
- NH<sub>4</sub>Cl 10.0 g/l

The pH was adjusted to 7.4 with 10 M NaOH prior to autoclaving. An appropriate volume of the above 10x stock was added to molten (50 °C) 2% (w/v) Difco agar in distilled water prior to the addition of the following constituents:

- 1 M MgSO<sub>4</sub> (autoclaved separately) 2.0 ml
- 0.1 M CaCl<sub>2</sub> " " 0.1 ml
- 20% glucose " " 10.0 ml
- Thiamine (100 μg/ml) 2.0 ml

**M13 phage.**

**H-top agar (pH 7.4).**

- NaCl 8 g/l
- Agar(Difco) 8 g/l

The pH was adjusted to 7.4 with 1M HCl.
2.3. BUFFERS AND SOLUTIONS FOR DNA TECHNIQUES

Information not included elsewhere:

**TE (1x) (pH 8.0).**

Tris-HCl 10 mM
EDTA 1 mM

The pH was adjusted to 8.0 with 5M NaOH.

**Preparation of chromosomal DNA.**

**Saline EDTA (pH 8.0).**

NaCl 0.15 M
EDTA 0.1 M

The pH was adjusted to pH 8.0 with NaOH.

**TE-saturated phenol.**

Phenol (Gibco-BRL) was stored at -20°C and melted by placing the bottle in a 60°C water bath. To the phenol an equal volume of 100 x TE was added and mixed, the mixture was centrifuged, and TE phase removed. Phenol: chloroform: isoamylalcohol (25:24:1) was made as needed.

**Preparation of plasmid DNA.**

**T.E.S. (pH 8.0).**

Tris-HCl 10 mM
EDTA 1 mM
NaCl 100 mM

The pH was adjusted with 5M NaOH.
Dialysis tubing (washed).

Dialysis tubing (Gibco-BRL) was supplied in 25% (v/v) ethanol, 1 mM EDTA, 1 mM sodium azide and required only a rinse in distilled water prior to use.

**Electrophoresis.**

**TBE buffer (10x) (pH 8.3).**

- Tris-base 0.9 M
- Boric acid 0.9 M
- EDTA 0.03 M

The pH was adjusted to 8.3 with NaOH.

**Agarose gel loading dye.**

- Bromophenol blue 0.25%
- Xylene cyanol FF 0.25%
- Ficoll 15% (w/v)

**Ethidium bromide**

This was made up as 10 mg/ml stock in water. The container was wrapped in aluminium foil and stored at room temperature.

**Southern blotting.**

**SSC buffer (20x) (pH 7.0).**

- NaCl 3.0 M
- Na₂citrate.2H₂O 0.3 M
Radiolabelling of oligonucleotide probes.

Kinase buffer (KB) (10x) (pH 7.4).

Tris-HCl 500 mM
MgCl₂ 100 mM
DTT 50 mM

The pH was adjusted to 7.4 with 1M HCl and the solution stored at -20°C.

DNA Hybridisation.

Denhardt’s reagent (50x).

Polyvinylpyrrolidone 10.0
BSA (pentax fraction V) 10.0
Ficoll (Type 400) 10.0

This was filter sterilized or made in sterile distilled water and stored at -20°C.

Polyacrylamide gels (for DNA sequencing).

40% Acrylamide stock.

Acrylamide 380
Bis-acrylamide 20

This was made up to one litre with distilled water, mixed with 20g amberlite MB-1 resin stirred for 30 min and filtered.
0.5 x TBE gel mix (A).

10 x TBE buffer 50 ml
40% acrylamide stock 150 ml
Urea (ultra-pure) 460 g

This was made up to 1 litre with distilled water.

5.0 x TBE gel mix (B).

10 x TBE buffer 500 ml
40% acrylamide stock 150 ml
Urea (ultra-pure) 460 g
Bromophenol blue 0.05 g

This was made up to 1 litre with distilled water.
2.4. BACTERIAL STRAINS AND RECOMBINANT DNA VECTORS.

2.4.1. *Bordetella* strains.

Various strains of the four *Bordetella* species were examined, including serotype variants of *B. pertussis* and phase variants of *B. pertussis* (I and IV) and *B. bronchiseptica* (I and III). For *B. parapertussis* and *B. avium*, only the virulent strains were available. A description of the source and serotype of the *Bordetella* strains is given in Table 2.1. *B. pertussis* Wellcome 28 is a vaccine strain originally from P. Novotny (Wellcome Laboratories, Beckenham, Kent). The strains, Arg 40 and Arg 41, are serotype variants of the strain Wellcome 28 (Robinson *et al.*, 1989b).

2.4.2. Other bacteria.

Other bacterial species used in this study and their sources are listed in Table 2.2.

2.4.3. Cosmid, plasmid and phage vectors.

These are listed in Table 2.3.

2.5. MEDIA AND GROWTH OF BACTERIA.

Details of media composition and preparation are given in Section 2.2. Short term storage of cultures was on agar plates at 4°C, whereas long term storage was at -70°C, as broth cultures supplemented with 50% glycerol (v/v).

*Bordetella* strains were grown in a moist atmosphere on Bordet-Gengou Agar supplemented with 15% (v/v) defibrinated horse blood and cephalexin (40 μg/ml) for 96 h (*B. pertussis*) or 24 h (*B. parapertussis, B. bronchiseptica*, and *B. avium*). Cultures were routinely checked for purity by streaking on BGA plates without cephalexin and by Gram staining. Liquid cultures were grown in
Table 2.1. *Bordetella* strains and serotypes used in this study.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Strain/phase</th>
<th>Serotype</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bordetella pertussis:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taberman</td>
<td>1,0,3</td>
<td>Professor G.T. Stewart^a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tohama</td>
<td>1,2,0</td>
<td>Dr A. Robinson b (*)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wellcome 28 (W28)</td>
<td>1,2,3</td>
<td>..</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arg 40</td>
<td>1,2,0</td>
<td>..</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arg 41</td>
<td>1,0,3</td>
<td>..</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>364 IV</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>NCTC 10901</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L84 I</td>
<td>1,2,0</td>
<td>NCTC 11089 (**)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L84 IV</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>NCTC 10902 (**)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D30042 I</td>
<td>1,2,3</td>
<td>NCTC 10911</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D30042 IV</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Dr J. Dolby c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>134 I</td>
<td>1,0,3</td>
<td>..</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>134 IV</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>..</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11615 IV</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>..</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M2 I</td>
<td>1,0,3</td>
<td>Dr. N. Preston d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bordetella parapertussis:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5952</td>
<td>Type strain</td>
<td>NCTC 5952</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10520</td>
<td></td>
<td>NCTC 10520</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bordetella bronchiseptica:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>452</td>
<td>Type strain</td>
<td>NCTC 452</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS1 I</td>
<td></td>
<td>Dr A.J. Lax e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS1 III</td>
<td></td>
<td>..</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>276 I</td>
<td></td>
<td>..</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>276 III</td>
<td></td>
<td>..</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FW5 I</td>
<td></td>
<td>..</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FW5 III</td>
<td></td>
<td>..</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bordetella avium</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4148</td>
<td></td>
<td>Dr R. Rimler f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4480</td>
<td></td>
<td>..</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NCTC: National Culture Type Collection

^a Ruchill Hospital, Glasgow.
^b Biologics Division, PHLS CAMR.
^c Clinical Research Centre, Middlesex.
^d Manchester University.
^e Institute for Research on Animal Diseases, Newbury, Berks.
^f University of Ames, Iowa, USA.
(*) Sato and Arai (1972).
(++) Ackers and Dolby (1972).
Table 2.2. Other bacteria.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Strain</th>
<th>Source</th>
<th>Genotype and reason for use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>E. coli</em> DH1</td>
<td>A</td>
<td><em>supE44, hsdR17, recA1, endA1, gyrA96, thi1, relA1,</em> <em>B. pertussis</em> library including cosmid clone, p16.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>E. coli</em> JM83</td>
<td>A</td>
<td><em>F− ara, (lac-proAB) rpsL, [φ 80 (d lacZ-M15)], flagellate +, Gram</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>E. coli</em> TG1</td>
<td>B</td>
<td><em>supE, hsd5, thi(lac-proAB)</em> <em>F</em> [traD36, proAB+, lacIq* *lacZ-M15], for phage replication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>E. coli</em> GM242</td>
<td>C</td>
<td><em>dam</em> −. For plasmid propogation in Dam + conditions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>S. typhimurium</em> LT2 EMG36</td>
<td>A</td>
<td><em>hin</em> +, flagellate +, Gram*.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Klebsiella aerogenes</em></td>
<td>D</td>
<td>flagellate −, Gram +.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Bacillus stearothermophilus</em></td>
<td>E</td>
<td>flagellate +, Gram +.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Peptostreptococcus magnus</em> W1384</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>flagellate −, Gram +.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Clostridium acetobutylicum</em></td>
<td>B</td>
<td>flagellate +, Gram +.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(A): Dr J. Coote, Department of Microbiology, University of Glasgow.
(B): Dr N.P. Minton, (E): Dr R. Hutson, (F): Dr J. Murphy, Division of Biotechnology, PHLS, CAMR.
(C): Dr G. Wilkinson, (D): Mr M. Hudson, Division of Pathology, PHLS CAMR.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vector</th>
<th>Relevant characteristics</th>
<th>Source/Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cosmid pLAFR1</td>
<td>21.6 kb, tetracycline resistant</td>
<td>Friedman <em>et al.</em> (1982).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cosmid p16</td>
<td>pLAFR1 clone of <em>B. pertussis</em> library</td>
<td>Brownlie <em>et al.</em> (1986).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plasmid pIC20H</td>
<td><em>B. pertussis</em> BscI 0.58 kb fragment from p16 cloned into pIC20H</td>
<td>This study.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.58 kb insert</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plasmid pKK1001B</td>
<td>pBR322 with a 8.8 kb <em>S. typhimurium</em> DNA insert</td>
<td>Dr K. Kutsukake a.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M13 mp18, mp19</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yanisch-Perron <em>et al.</em> (1985)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a Hiroshima University, Japan
chemically defined Basal medium (Stainer and Scholte, 1971) containing 2-6-0-dimethyl-β-cyclodextrin (Imaizumi et al., 1983), growth supplement and 1% (w/v) casamino acids (Section 2.2.). Filter-sterilised growth supplements and autoclaved casamino acids were added to autoclaved broth immediately prior to use. B. pertussis was grown for c. 48 h and the other Bordetella for c. 36 h until the cultures were turbid. All cultures were grown under X-mode conditions to produce virulent organisms. B. pertussis strain Taberman was also grown under C-mode conditions (Lacey, 1960) by replacing the NaCl in the media with MgSO₄ (Section 2.2).

Other species were grown at 37 °C on nutrient agar, or with agitation in liquid culture, either in Nutrient broth or L-broth (Section 2.2). E. coli TG1 was grown on minimal media agar (Section 2.2).

The antibiotics used are listed below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Antibiotic</th>
<th>Working concentration</th>
<th>Stock solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ampicillin</td>
<td>50 μg/ml</td>
<td>25 mg/ml in distilled water.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Erythromycin</td>
<td>25 μg/ml</td>
<td>10 mg/ml in ethanol.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tetracycline</td>
<td>10 μg/ml</td>
<td>5 mg/ml in 50% ethanol. Stored in the dark.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cephalexin</td>
<td>40 μg/ml</td>
<td>Stored in fridge.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

All antibiotics in solution were sterilised by filtration using a 0.22 micron (Millipore) disposable filter and stored in aliquots at -20 °C.
2.6. MICROBIOLOGICAL TECHNIQUES.

2.6.1. Determination of phase/mode of *Bordetella*.

The phase/mode of each strain grown for chromosomal DNA preparation was checked as follows:

2.6.1.a. Growth on selective agar.

Phase IV strains but not phase I strains of *B. pertussis* are able to grow on nutrient agar and BGA (Section 2.2.) containing erythromycin (2.5 μg/ml).

2.6.1.b. Haemolysin assay.

Strains were streaked to single colonies on BGA plates overlaid with BGA containing 20% blood (Section 2.2). After incubation for 5 days at 37°C, haemolytic activity was evident as a clear zone of haemolysis around the colonies.

2.6.1.c. Haemagglutination.

Defibrinated horse red blood cells (Tissue Culture Services Ltd. Buckingham) were washed three times in phosphate-buffered saline, PBS. Packed cells were diluted to 2% (v/v) in PBS and 100 μl volumes were mixed with 100μl of bacterial cells (grown in liquid culture) in the U-shaped wells of plastic microtitre trays (Nunc). These were covered and left overnight at room temperature. Haemagglutination was apparent when the red blood cells formed a "shield" of cells over the bottom of the wells, and lack of haemagglutination was shown by the formation of a characteristic pellet at the bottom of the well.

2.6.1.d. Motility.

Motility was tested by taking a loopful of *Bordetella* cells (grown overnight on BGA) and mixing the cells with 1ml of PBS to form a suspension,
followed by examination under phase contrast microscopy (Leitz Dialux microscope, 1,250 x magnification).

A summary of the phenotypic properties of the *Bordetella* strains used in this study is given in Table 2.4.

2.6.2. Transformation of *E.coli*.

Strains of *E.coli* were transformed and transfected (with plasmid and M13 DNA respectively) essentially as described by Cohen et al. (1972).

2.6.2.a. Preparation of competent cells.

*E. coli* JM83 was used for plasmid transformations and *E. coli* TG1 for phage M13 transfections (the F pilus of TG1 enabled binding of the M13 phage). TG1 was grown on minimal agar (Section 2.2) before growing overnight in liquid culture. A 0.5 ml sample of an overnight culture of the desired *E.coli* strain was used to inoculate 50 ml of prewarmed L-broth in a 250 ml conical flask. Cells were grown at 37 °C with vigorous aeration until the OD\textsubscript{450} of the culture reached 0.6 and the culture was then chilled on ice for 20 min. Cells were then harvested by centrifugation (3000 x g, 10 min, 4 °C) and the supernatant fluid discarded. The bacterial pellet was resuspended in 25 ml of cold 0.1 M MgCl\textsubscript{2} and immediately harvested as before. The cell pellet was then resuspended in 2.5 ml of cold 0.1 M CaCl\textsubscript{2} and the suspension was kept on ice for 2 h to make the cells competent.

2.6.2.b. Transformation/transfection.

Transformation/transfection was achieved by adding the transforming DNA (1 μg in a volume of 1-10 μl) to 100 μl of the competent cells and storing on ice for 30 min. The cells were then subjected to a heat shock by incubating them for 2 min at 42°C before returning them to the ice for 30 min. Transformed cells
Table 2.4. Phenotypic characteristics of the *Bordetella* strains used in this study.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Strain</th>
<th>Growth on Nutrient Agar</th>
<th>Growth on BG and erythromycin</th>
<th>Haemolysis</th>
<th>HA</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bordetella pertussis:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taberman</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taberman C-mode</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tohama</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wellcome 28, W28</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arg 40</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+/-</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arg 41</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L84 I</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L84 IV</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D30042 I</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+/-</td>
<td>+/-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D30042 IV</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+/-</td>
<td>+/-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>134 I</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>134 IV</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+/-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11615 IV</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>364 IV</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M2 I</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+/-</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bordetella parapertussis:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5952</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+/-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10520</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+/-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bordetella bronchiseptica:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>452</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+/-</td>
<td>+/-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS1 I</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS1 III</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>276 I</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+/-</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>276 III</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FW5 I</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FW5 III</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bordetella avium:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4148</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4480</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*B. pertussis* and *B. parapertussis* strains were found to be non-motile whereas all *B. bronchiseptica* strains were motile, *B. avium* strains were not tested for motility.

+ = positive for phenotype, +/- = weak for phenotype, - = negative for phenotype, ... = not tested for phenotype, HA = haemagglutination.
were diluted ten times in pre-warmed L-broth for expression of antibiotic resistances prior to plating on agar selective plates.

For M13 DNA transfection, the expression step was not necessary and cells were added directly to soft agar overlays after the heat shock. Prewarmed 25 ml plastic test tubes containing 3 ml molten H-top agar (Section 2.2), 80 µl of X-Gal (20 mg/ml in dimethylformamide) and 40 µl of IPTG (40 mg/ml in water) were held at 45 °C. Transfected TG1 cells and 0.2 ml of exponentially-growing E. coli TG1 cells were added to the tubes and gently mixed. This mixture was immediately poured as an overlay onto 2 x YT agar plates (Section 2.2). After the overlay had set the plates were inverted and incubated at 37 °C overnight.

2.7. DNA MANIPULATION TECHNIQUES.

Section 2.3. gives details of preparation of buffers and solutions mentioned but not described below.

2.7.1. Chromosomal DNA preparation (adapted from Marmur, 1961).

Bordetella strains were grown on BGA plates and a large inoculum (loopful of cells) was used to inoculate 200 ml of Basal medium (Section 2.2). The cultures were grown for 36-48 h, until turbid, and the cells harvested by centrifugation at 10,000 x g for 10 min at 4°C. The pellet was resuspended in saline EDTA, pH 8.0 (Section 2.3) (c. 10 ml per 2.5 g wet weight of cells). Lysozyme (Sigma) was added to give a final concentration of 1 mg/ml and the solution incubated with mixing at 37 °C for 30 min. The cells were lysed by the addition of TE buffer (Section 2.3) (4 ml to 20 ml suspension), proteinase K (Sigma, final conc 0.1 mg/ml) and SDS (final conc. 2 % w/v). The mixture was incubated at 37 °C for 1 h until lysis occurred, after which time the solution was de-proteinised by adding 0.33 volume of freshly-prepared sodium perchlorate (66.5% w/v in TE buffer) with gentle mixing. An equal volume of TE-saturated phenol/chloroform, 1:1 (Section 2.3), was then added and mixed until a stable
creamy emulsion was formed. The mixture was centrifuged (5,000 x g for 10 min), the clear upper layer removed for retention and extracted twice with chloroform:isoamyl alcohol (24:1 v/v). To precipitate the DNA from the solution, two volumes of ethanol (stored at -20 °C) was overlaid and the DNA gently spooled onto a glass rod, briefly air dried and then dissolved in 0.1 x TE buffer. To ensure the DNA was fully dissolved it was left overnight at 4 °C then stored at -20 °C. The DNA was treated with DNase-free RNase (BCL) final concentration 20 µg/ml before digestion with restriction enzymes and analysis by agarose gel electrophoresis.

2.7.2. Large scale cosmid/plasmid DNA isolation from E. coli.

This protocol was based on the method of Clewell and Helinski (1969). A single bacterial colony from an overnight plate was inoculated into 150 ml of L-broth (plus antibiotics where appropriate) and incubated at 37 °C for approximately 20 h with moderate shaking (250 rpm) in a conical flask. The cells were harvested by centrifugation (10,000 x g, 15 min, 4 °C) and resuspended in 2.6 ml 25% sucrose, 0.05 M Tris-HCl (pH 8.0). The cell suspension was transferred to a cold polypropylene centrifuge tube for the addition of 0.4 ml of a freshly prepared lysozyme solution (20 mg/ml in 0.25 M EDTA, pH 8.0) and swirled intermittently on ice for 5 min. Then, 2.6 ml of 0.25 M EDTA (pH 8.0) was added and swirled intermittently on ice for 5 min before the rapid addition of 4 ml of the lysing solution (1% (w/v) Brij 58, 0.4% (v/v) sodium deoxycholate in 0.01 M Tris, 0.001 M EDTA, pH 8.0). The solution was then drawn into and expelled three times from a 10 ml pipette to ensure even mixing and then left on ice for 20-30 min. The cell debris and the bulk of the chromosomal DNA was removed by centrifugation (10,000 x g, 45 min, 4 °C). The watery supernatant (cleared lysate) was carefully decanted into a fresh tube and the volume measured accurately with a 10 ml pipette. Covalently-closed circular plasmid DNA was separated from chromosomal DNA and nicked and linear plasmid
DNA by centrifugation in caesium chloride-ethidium bromide density gradients. Solid caesium chloride was added at a concentration of 1 g/ml of cleared lysate. After this, 0.2 ml ethidium bromide solution (10 mg/ml in distilled water) was added and the solution transferred to a Ti50 polyallomer ultracentrifuge tube (Du Pont/Sorvall "quick-seal"). Tubes were balanced to within 50 mg in pairs by the addition of caesium chloride solution (prepared by dissolving 1.0 g CsCl in 1 ml TES; Section 2.3). The upper reaches of the inside wall of each tube were dried and liquid paraffin was added to fill the tube. The tubes were then balanced to within 50 mg before sealing using the Du pont/Sorval tube crimping system. The balance of each pair of tubes was then confirmed and the tubes centrifuged (140,000 x g, 36-48 h, 20 °C). After centrifugation the bands of DNA in the tubes were visualised with a UV long wave transilluminator (Black-ray Ultraviolet Products Inc., Cambridge, U.K.). Initially, the tube was pierced at the top with a hypodermic needle. Subsequently, 23-gauge hypodermic needle was used to pierce the tube approximately 1cm below the lower (plasmid) band and the solution was allowed to drip out through the needle. The fraction containing the plasmid was collected and the ethidium bromide was removed by extracting three times with isoamyl alcohol (equilibrated with TE saturated with CsCl). The clear, lower phase containing the DNA solution was then transferred to prepared dialysis tubing (1/4", Gibco-BRL, Section 2.3.) and the CsCl was removed by dialysis against 1 litre volumes of TE buffer (Section 2.3.) (4 °C for 1 h, 3 h and overnight).

2.7.3. Phenol purification of plasmid DNA.

Deproteinization of DNA samples was achieved by extracting samples with an equal volume of phenol, pre-equilibrated with 100 x TE buffer (Section 2.3). The DNA/phenol solution was mixed for 1 min on an Eppendorf shaker, left to stand for 5 min and then shaken again for 1 min. The phases were then separated by centrifugation (13000 x g, 2 min) and the aqueous (top) phase
transferred to a fresh tube. Traces of phenol were removed by extraction 3 times with a double volume of water-saturated diethyl ether. Any residual ether was removed by incubation at 55 °C for 10 min. The purified DNA sample was then ethanol precipitated.

2.7.4. Ethanol precipitation of DNA.

For routine precipitation of DNA, 0.1 volume of 3 M sodium acetate (pH 4.8) and 2.5 volumes of chilled absolute ethanol were added to samples. Following incubation for at least 1 h at -20 °C or 15 min. at -70 °C, DNA was recovered by centrifugation (13000 x g, 4°C, 10 min). The supernate was carefully decanted and discarded. The DNA pellet was then washed in 70% (v/v) ethanol, centrifuged as above (2 min only), dried under vacuum and resuspended in an appropriate volume of TE buffer.

2.7.5. DNA concentration and purity.

The DNA concentration and the level of protein contamination was determined by diluting the DNA in TE buffer (Section 2.3.) and measuring the optical density at 260 nm and 280 nm in a quartz cuvette in a spectrophotometer (Pye Unicam, PU, 8600, UV/Vis). An optical density of 1.0 at 260 nm is equivalent to a DNA concentration of 50 µg/ml, for double stranded DNA, 40 µg/ml for single stranded DNA and RNA, and approximately 20 µg/ml for single stranded oligonucleotides (Sambrook et al., 1989). Protein or phenol contamination was considered negligible if the ratio OD_{260}/OD_{280} was 1.7 or greater.

Alternatively the concentration of a DNA sample was estimated visually on a U.V. transilluminator after separating samples by electrophoresis on agarose gels alongside samples of lambda of known concentration for direct comparison of band intensities after staining with ethidium bromide and photographing.
2.7.6. Digestion of DNA with restriction endonucleases.

All restriction endonucleases were purchased from either Boehringer Mannheim (BCL), Gibco-BRL, New England Biolabs or Northumbria Biologicals Ltd. (NBL).

Restriction enzymes were used according to the manufacturer's instructions except that an excess of enzyme (2-10 x) was used routinely with an incubation of 3 h. For chromosomal digests, an excess of enzyme (15 x) was used with an extended digestion time of 5 h to ensure that there were no partial digestion products. If digested DNA was to be used for ligation, endonuclease activity was destroyed by heat inactivation at 65 °C for 10 min.

Restriction enzymes used in this study are detailed in Table 2.5. Clal and BscI are isoschizomers which cleave the same restriction site. Double digestions with StuI and BscI used the BscI buffer as this was more compatible for both enzymes than the Clal buffer. DNA obtained from dam+ E.coli strains was partially resistant to cleavage by Clal. Further methylase sensitive enzymes used in this study are detailed in Table 2.6.

2.7.7. Size markers for DNA electrophoresis.

To prepare lambda HindIII markers, 20 μg of lambda DNA was digested with HindIII at 37 °C for 3 h and either used directly or stored at -20 °C. Before use, the sample was heated at 65 °C for 5 min and rapidly cooled to separate annealed cos sites. Routinely 1.0 μg of HindIII-digested lambda DNA was mixed with 1/4 volume of agarose gel-loading dye and loaded on a electrophoresis gel. This quantity of lambda DNA allowed visual identification of all bands.

The lambda HindIII fragment sizes (kb) are 23.1, 9.4, 6.5, 4.4, 2.3, 2.0, 0.56, 0.12.

The 1 kilobase (kb) DNA ladder was suitable for sizing linear double-stranded DNA fragments from 500 bp to 12 kb. The kb ladder was
Table 2.5. Restriction enzymes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ENZYME</th>
<th>CLEAVAGE SITE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>BamH</em>&lt;sub&gt;II&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>G’ GATCC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*BamHI&lt;sub&gt;III&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>AT’ CGAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*BbvI&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>GCAGC(N)&lt;sub&gt;8&lt;/sub&gt;’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*BglII&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>A’ GATCT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Bsci&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>AT’ CGAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ClaI&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>AT’ CGAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*EcoRI&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>G’ AATTC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*EcoRV&lt;sup&gt;f&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>GAT’ ATC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*HindIII&lt;sup&gt;g&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>A’ AGCTT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*KpnI&lt;sup&gt;h&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>GGTAC’ C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*MboI&lt;sup&gt;i&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>’ GATC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*NruI&lt;sup&gt;j&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>TCG’ CGA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*PstI&lt;sup&gt;k&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>CTGCA’ G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>SacI&lt;sup</em>l&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>GAGCT’ C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*SalI&lt;sup&gt;m&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>G’ TCGAC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Sau3A&lt;sup&gt;n&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>’ GATC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*SmaI&lt;sup&gt;o&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>CCC’ GGG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*SphI&lt;sup&gt;p&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>GCATG’ C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Stul&lt;sup?q&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>AGG’ CCT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*XbaI&lt;sup&gt;r&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>T’ CTAGA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*XhoI&lt;sup&gt;s&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>C’ TCGAG</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup>*BbvI*: cleavage occurs 3’ of the last nucleotide (N) in the recognition sequence above.

<sup>b</sup>: signifies a recognition cut site.
Table 2.6. Methylase sensitive enzymes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ENZYME</th>
<th>CLEAVAGE SITE</th>
<th>METHYLATION SENSITIVITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dam methylation sensitivity:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(DpnI)</td>
<td>(GA^{\text{m6}'}TC)</td>
<td>Active only if Dam methylation present at cleavage site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(MboI)</td>
<td>(GATC)</td>
<td>Blocked by Dam methylation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Sau3A)</td>
<td>(GATC)</td>
<td>Not blocked by Dam methylation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(BscI)</td>
<td>(AT'CGAT)</td>
<td>Sensitive to Dam methylation when recognition sequence preceded by a (5') guanine or followed by a (3') cytosine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ClaI)</td>
<td>(AT'CGAT)</td>
<td>Does not cleave DNA when either the (A) or (C) residue is (N^6)-methyladenine or (N^5)-methylcytosine respectively.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CCGG Methylation sensitivity.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(MspI)</td>
<td>(C'CGG)</td>
<td>Not blocked by CCGG methylation at (N^4) or (N^5) position of internal cytosine (but is by (N^5) methyl cytosine at the (5') C residue).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(HpaII)</td>
<td>(C'CGG)</td>
<td>Blocked by CCGG methylation at (N^4) or (N^5) position of internal cytosine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dcm methylation sensitivity:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(BstNI)</td>
<td>(CC'(A/T)GG)</td>
<td>Not blocked by Dcm methylation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(EcoRII)</td>
<td>(CC(A/T)GG)</td>
<td>Blocked by Dcm methylation.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

': signifies recognition sequence cleavage site.

Dam methylation = methyl group transferred from S-adenosyl-methionine to \(N^6\) position of the adenine residues in sequence GATC. Dcm methylation = methylation of internal cytosine residues in sequence CCAGG.
diluted to use, kb ladder: dye : sterile distilled water 100:100:300 μl; 1.0μ g per track produced distinct bands.
The 1 kilobase DNA ladder fragment sizes (kb) are 12.0, 11.0, 10.0, 9.0, 8.0, 7.0, 6.0, 5.0, 4.0, 3.0, 2.0, 1.6, 1.0, 0.5.

2.7.8. Agarose gel electrophoresis.

Electrophoresis through agarose was used to separate, identify and purify DNA fragments. The horizontal gel electrophoresis systems employed were obtained from Gibco-BRL (H4 and Horizon 58 systems). Routine analytical gels were made in 1 x TBE buffer (Section 2.3.) using agarose (type 1, low EEO, Sigma) at a concentration of 1% w/v (in 1% agarose there is a linear relationship between log₅ size and mobility for DNA fragments between 7 kb and 0.5 kb). To separate smaller fragments (0.1-0.5 kb) the agarose concentration was increased to 2% w/v. Low gelling temperature agarose (Type XI, Sigma) was also used in preparative gels for cloning and probe preparation. Agarose was dissolved in the buffer by heating in a microwave oven, then cooled to 50 °C before pouring into plastic gel casting trays. Usually, 100 ml and 300 ml of molten gel was used for the model H5 midi and H4 systems respectively. After the gel had set (c. 30 min, at 4 °C), the comb was removed and the gel submerged in 1 x TBE gel running buffer. Samples were mixed with a 0.1 volume of agarose Gel Loading dye (Section 2.2) prior to loading into the wells. Gels were subjected to electrophoresis (15 V/cm for 5 h or 1-5 V/cm overnight) and stained by adding ethidium bromide (0.2 μg/ml) to the electrophoresis buffer for overnight electrophoresis or otherwise placed in a solution of ethidium bromide (0.5 μg/ml in water) for 30 min and then rinsed in distilled water. DNA was visualised by UV illumination on a transilluminator (Black-ray Ultraviolet Products, Cambridge, UK) and photographed with a Polaroid camera (MP4 land camera system) through a red filter using Polaroid 667 black and white film (ASA 3000). Normally, an aperture setting of F8 and exposure times of 1-4
seconds were sufficient. The size of the fragments were calculated by reference to the DNA markers. If precise measurements were needed the distance travelled by the marker fragments from the origin was plotted against log size (in kb) on semi-log paper to produce a calibration curve for that gel. The size of the test DNA was determined from its mobility by comparison with the calibration curve.

2.7.9. Purification of DNA from agarose.

DNA was purified from agarose using a Geneclean II kit according to the manufacturers specifications (obtained from Stratech Scientific Ltd, Luton, UK). The band containing the DNA to be purified was excised from the agarose gel with a scalpel, weighed, and placed in a microfuge tube. NaI stock solution (6M) three times the weight of the gel slice was then added. The tube was incubated at 50°C for 5 min with intermittent mixing to dissolve all the agarose. For agarose gels made with TBE buffer, 0.5 volume of TBE Modifier and 4.5 volumes of NaI were then added. For DNA content < 5 μg, 5μl of vortexed glassmilk suspension (silica matrix in water) was added. The solution was incubated on ice for 5 min and mixed every 1-2 min to allow binding of the DNA to the silica matrix. The microfuge tube was then centrifuged for approximately 5 s and the supernate discarded. The pellet was washed 3 times with 450 μl ice cold "New Wash" (NaCl/ethanol/water). The DNA was eluted from the glassmilk by resuspending it in TE buffer and incubating at 50 °C for 3 min. The tube was centrifuged for 30 s and the supernatant containing the DNA removed. A second elution was performed if a high recovery was required. The eluted DNA was used immediately or stored at -20°C.

2.7.10. Subcloning.

The vector plasmid pIC20H DNA was digested overnight with ClaI at 37°C in a total volume of 20 μl, and 1 μl was tested on an electrophoretic gel to
ensure it was fully digested. The digested DNA was then heated at 70°C for 15 min to inactivate the restriction enzyme. If the vector was to be dephosphorylated to prevent self ligation calf intestinal phosphatase (Gibco-BRL: at 5 units per μg of DNA) was added and the tube incubated at 37°C for 1 h. Afterwards EDTA was added to a final concentration of 5 mM and the mixture then heated at 75°C for 10 min to inactivate the enzyme. The vector and insert DNA were then subjected to electrophoresis on a LMP agarose gel and the fragments purified with Geneclean prior to ligation.

2.7.11. Ligation.

Ligations were performed in a 0.5 ml microfuge tube using 100 ng vector and an equimolar amount of insert DNA in 1 x ligase buffer (5 x ligase buffer supplied with the T4 DNA ligase by the Gibco-BRL manufacturers). If less insert DNA was available, 50 ng of vector was used and a maximum volume of insert. T4 DNA ligase was added at a concentration of approximately 0.1-1.0 unit per μg of vector DNA and the mixture incubated overnight at 15°C.

2.7.12. Southern blotting.

The transfer of electrophoretically-separated DNA fragments from a gel to a solid support was first reported by Southern (1975). The technique involves blotting the DNA from an agarose gel to a nitrocellulose or nylon membrane, followed by the detection of specific immobilised sequences by hybridisation.

2.7.12.a. Alkaline Southern blotting with Zeta-Probe nylon membrane.

"Zeta-Probe" membranes (Bio-Rad) bind DNA irreversibly and quantitatively in alkaline solution eliminating the need for post-transfer fixation and resulting in an increase in sensitivity. Transfer of DNA from agarose gels to the "Zeta-Probe" nylon membrane was achieved using alkaline solutions and capillary transfer (Reed and Mann, 1985). Before transfer, ethidium bromide-
stained gels were visualised under UV illumination and photographed. In order to facilitate the transfer of large DNA fragments, the DNA was nicked by partial depurination by soaking the gel in c. 500 ml 0.25 M HCl for 15 min. Gels were subsequently rinsed thoroughly with water. Four sheets of Whatman 3MM filter paper were cut and placed on a glass plate so that they overhung the bottom of the gel tray by 5 cm on each end (approximately 20 x 40 cm for a gel size of 20 x 20 cm). They were placed on an inverted gel casting tray in the bottom of a deep dish and the filter paper was then saturated with 0.4 M NaOH, as the neutralising/denaturing agent. Bubbles were removed by repeatedly rolling a glass pipette over the saturated filter paper, pouring enough NaOH into the deep dish so that the filter paper wick ends were immersed in NaOH. More NaOH was poured onto the filter paper wick to saturate it, then the gel carefully placed on the 3MM paper, again making sure that no bubbles were trapped beneath the gel. The gel was then covered with a small amount of NaOH. Saran Wrap plastic film was placed over the entire gel/filter paper stack and a window cut out allowing the gel to emerge. The Zeta-Probe membrane was moistened in distilled water and then lowered onto the gel surface making first contact in the centre, and then out to the edges. The filter surface was carefully flooded with NaOH, making sure that no bubbles were present between the gel and the membrane. Two pieces of filter paper were cut exactly to the size of the gel. A sheet of pre-cut filter paper was moistened with water and placed on the membrane/gel stack, then this was repeated with a second sheet. Any bubbles were removed from beneath each layer of filter paper. A stack of pre-cut blotting paper (QuickDraw, Sigma) was placed on the filter paper/Zeta-Probe membrane/gel stack and covered with a glass plate and a weight of c. 250 g to keep the blotting paper in intimate contact with the gel and with one another. The transfer was allowed to proceed overnight; after transfer the stack of blotting paper was removed and the orientation of the gel marked on the membrane. The Zeta-Probe membrane was gently peeled from the surface of
the gel and rinsed in 2 x SSC (Section 2.3) and air dried. The dried membranes were stored at room temperature. Membranes could be kept indefinitely in this condition. To confirm satisfactory transfer of the DNA, the gel was restained with ethidium bromide and visualised under UV light to ensure no DNA remains in the gel.

2.7.12.b. **High salt Southern blotting with Hybond-N nylon membrane.**

Another transfer method used high salt concentration Southern blotting with the same capillary transfer as in 2.8.12.a. The gel was treated with 0.25 M HCl and briefly rinsed in distilled water. However, before placing the gel in the blot it was soaked for 30 min in 250 ml denaturing solution (0.5 M NaOH, 1.5 M NaCl) and rinsed again in distilled water. The gel was then washed in neutralising solution (3 M NaCl, 0.5 M Tris-HCl, pH 7.4) for 30 min. The DNA was transferred to Hybond-N membrane (Amersham) with 20 x SSC. The nylon blotting membrane and 3MM filter paper cut to the size of the gel were soaked in 3 x SSC. After transfer, the membrane was rinsed briefly in 3 x SSC, blotted dry with filter paper and allowed to dry at room temperature. The membrane was then wrapped in Saran Wrap plastic film so that only a single layer covered the side of the membrane that was in contact with the gel, the "DNA side". The wrapped membrane was placed on the U.V. transilluminator, for c. 2 min DNA side down, to allow the U.V. light to covalently crosslink the DNA to the membrane. The membranes were stored at 4°C.

2.7.13. **Radiolabelling of size markers for Southern blots.**

Lambda HindIII fragments were labelled at their 3’ end and 1.0 kilobase ladder DNA marker (1kb) was labelled by filling in the 3’ recessed ends using DNA polymerase. To 10 µl (about 10 µg) of lambda HindIII digest (or 1 kb ladder) was added 78 µl SDW, 10 µl of sequence buffer (Sequencing kit USB 70700, Section 2.4.20.c.), 1 µl (10 µCi) [α-32P]dATP (400 Ci/mmol, Amersham
code PB 10164) and 1 µl of the Klenow fragment of \textit{E. coli} DNA polymerase (BRL). The reaction was left at room temperature for 15 min, loading buffer was added and the whole mixture divided between two agarose gel slots flanking the other DNA samples on both sides. Depending on the age of the \(^{32}\text{P}\)-label, unlabelled DNA could be added to labelled material before loading to reduce the intensity of \(^{32}\text{P}\) radiation.


PCR is a powerful technique based on primer-directed enzymic amplification of target DNA (Mullis and Faloona, 1987). Two oligonucleotide primers are designed from opposite strands of the DNA template so as to flank the target sequence. The 3' ends are orientated such that they point towards each other. Repeated cycles of template denaturation, primer annealing and polymerase-directed extension of the annealed primers, results in the exponential accumulation of the target sequence as defined by the 5' ends of both primers.

The GeneAmp PCR reagent kit (Perkin Elmer Cetus) was used to produce the PCR product. Both primers were separately diluted in TE buffer to a concentration of 600 pM. The reaction mixture in a 500 µl microfuge tube contained: 1 x reaction buffer [10mM Tris-HCl (pH 8.3), 50 mM KCl, 1.5 mM MgCl\(_2\), 0.001% (w/v) gelatin]; 200 µM each dNTP; 5 µl of each diluted primer; and x µl of SDW to result in a total volume of (90 µl). Template DNA, 10 µl (10 ng/µl) of plasmid DNA or 10 µl (80 ng/µl) chromosomal DNA, and 0.5 µl of recombinant \textit{Taq} DNA polymerase ("AmpliTaq") were then added. The reaction mixture was overlaid with light mineral oil (Sigma) and subjected to automatic thermal cycling in a programmable thermal cycler (MJ Research Inc.). A thermal programme which worked well was:

1. 1.5 min 94 °C Denaturation
2. 1.0 min 42 °C Annealing
3. 1.5 min  72 °C  Extension

The cycle stages 1-3 were repeated 25 times.

4. 4 min  72 °C  Final Extension

5. 24h  4 °C  Cooling and Storage

Controls where no template DNA was added were included in order to ensure that none of the reagents were contaminated by previous PCR reactions.

The PCR product was subjected to electrophoresis on a 1% low melting point (LMP) agarose gel (Sigma). 10 μl of each reaction mix was usually sufficient to visualise the PCR product. The relevant purified PCR DNA fragment was then excised from the gel and stored as in 2.4.15.a.

2.7.15. Synthesis of oligonucleotides.

Oligonucleotides were synthesised on an Applied Biosystems Model 380A DNA synthesiser by Mr K. Fantom and Mr R. Hartwell (Division of Biotechnology, PHLS CAMR). The samples were desalted by passage through a 10ml prepacked Sephadex G-25 (Pharmacia, PD-10) column.

The concentration of oligonucleotides was determined spectrophotometrically. The OD$_{260}$ was measured using a quartz cuvette in a spectrophotometer (Pye Unicam, PU 8600). A reading of 1.0 was taken as representing a concentration of 20 μg/ml for oligonucleotides (Sambrook et al., 1989). Where necessary, oligonucleotides were diluted with TE and stored at -20°C.

2.7.16. Preparation of radioactively-labelled probes.

2.7.16.a. Random hexanucleotide labelling of gene probes.

This protocol was based on the method of Feinberg and Vogelstein (1984). In this procedure, denatured DNA is hybridised at a large number of
sites along the DNA with hexamer oligonucleotides that have random mixed bases at each position. These oligonucleotides serve as primers for DNA synthesis by Klenow polymerase in the presence of radionucleotides.

The Multiprime labelling system (Amersham) was used to label the DNA according to the manufacturers instructions. Restriction endonuclease-digested DNA was fractionated in a LMP agarose gel. The concentration of the DNA was estimated to ensure at least 250 ng of DNA was contained in the agarose band so that 25 ng could be extracted and used in the labelling protocol without concentrating the DNA. The band was excised cleanly with a scalpel blade, with the minimum amount of excess agarose, and transferred to a preweighed 1.5 ml polypropylene microfuge tube. SDW was added at a ratio of 3 ml per gram of gel, and placed in a boiling water bath for 7 min. to melt the gel and denature the DNA. If the DNA was not used immediately, the boiled samples were divided into aliquots and stored at -20 °C. On removal from -20° C, the DNA (25-100 ng, 1-10 μl) sample was then denatured by heating to 95-100 °C for 3 min in a boiling water bath (reboiling more than 3 times was avoided), and incubated at 37 °C for 10 mins. The following reagents from the Amersham kit were then added: 4 μl each of CTP, GTP, TTP, 5 μl buffer (reaction buffer containing: Tris-HCl (pH7.8), MgCl₂ and 2-mercaptoethanol), 5 μl primer (random hexanucleotides in an aqueous solution), SDW (the volume as appropriate for a final reaction volume of 50 μl), 5 μl [α-³²P]dATP (400 Ci/mmol, Amersham) and 2 μl Klenow fragment polymerase (1 unit per μl, Amersham). The reaction mixture was incubated overnight at room temperature overnight to ensure labelling to high specific activity. For use in a hybridisation reaction, the labelled DNA was denatured by heating to 95-100 °C for 5 min. The volume was made up to 200 μl with SDW and the probe used immediately by adding to the pre-hybridisation solution.
2.7.16.b. Radiolabelling of oligonucleotide probes.

Oligonucleotides that were to be used as probes were initially diluted to 100 ng/μl. They were then labelled at their 5' hydroxy termini by the action of T4 polynucleotide kinase. 2 μl of the diluted oligonucleotide was added to a mixture containing 5 μl aqueous [γ-³²P]-dATP (3000 Ci/mmol), (10 Ci/μl), (Amersham), 2 μl 10x kinase buffer (Section 2.3), 9 μl distilled water and 20 units of T4 polynucleotide kinase (BCL, 10 units/μl). The reaction was allowed to proceed for 60 min at 37°C and then the probe was added directly to the pre-hybridisation mixture.

2.7.17. Hybridisation conditions.

Pre-hybridisation, hybridisations and washes were carried out in a rotor oven (Bachofer Ltd).

2.7.17.a. Low stringency hybridisation with Zeta-Probe membrane.

*S. typhimurium* DNA probes, multiprime-radiolabeled in agarose (Section 2.8.15.a), were hybridised to *Bordetella* DNA bound to Zeta-Probe. As different species were involved, low stringency hybridisation was used. Prehybridisation was initially at 42°C with agitation overnight in 20 ml of a solution containing 6.6 x SSC, 1% SDS, 5x Denhardt's solution (Section 2.3), 33% formamide and 10 μg/ml denatured salmon sperm DNA (Sigma) (Sambrook *et al.*, 1989). The salmon sperm DNA and Denhardt's reagent acted as blocking agents to prevent non-specific attachment of the DNA probe to the membrane. The probe was placed in a boiling water bath for 5 min, and added to the pre-hybridisation mix as described above and the membrane again agitated at 42°C overnight. The membrane was washed twice in 5x SSC, 0.1% w/v SDS, for 30 min at 50°C and twice in 1 x SSC, 0.1% w/v SDS for 1 h at 50°C. The membrane was air dried and wrapped in Saran wrap before autoradiography (Kodak X-Omat AR, XAR-5 film). Sensitivity was increased by sandwiching the film and membrane
between two intensifying screens inside the light-proof cassette.

2.7.17.b. **Hybond-N membrane.**

Hybond-N membrane was used in initial work and, as both the DNA bound to the membrane and that used as a probe were from *B. pertussis*, higher stringency conditions were used. Prehybridisation solution consisted of 4 x SSC, 50% formamide, 4 x Denhardt's, 0.4% SDS, and 2 mg/ml salmon sperm DNA. After prehybridisation overnight at 42°C the labelled probe was added and hybridisation continued overnight at 42°C. Washes consisted of two at room temperature for 30 min with 2 x SSC, 0.1% SDS and two at 68°C for 1 h with 1 x SSC, 0.1% SDS.

For a lower stringency hybridisation, the formamide was reduced to 20% and the final washes carried out at 50°C for 60 min with 2 x SSC and 0.1% SDS.

2.7.17.c. **Oligonucleotide hybridisation.**

Hybridisation temperatures varied between oligonucleotides, the temperature to be used was calculated as 5°C below the dissociation temperature as described by Suggs *et al.* (1981) using the formula: \( T_d(°C) = 2(A+T) + 4(G+C) \). This formula gives the temperature, in degrees centigrade, at which one half of oligonucleotide-genomic DNA duplexes are dissociated. In general, this formula is applicable for oligonucleotides of 10 to 21 nucleotides in length. The pre-hybridisation solution consisted of 20 ml of 6 x SSC, 5x Denhardt's solution, 0.5% SDS, (0.05% sodium pyrophosphate was included in some solutions to reduce background binding) and 10 µg/ml salmon sperm DNA and incubation was overnight at the same temperature calculated for the hybridisation. The labelled oligonucleotide was added to the prehybridisation solution and the hybridisation continued overnight at the same temperature. The membranes were washed three times in 6 x SSC, 0.1% SDS, at room temperature, and then finally for 30 min at the temperature used for the
hybridisation.

2.7.18. Autoradiography.

This was used for visualisation of radiolabelled fragments following both Southern hybridisation and DNA sequencing. After Southern hybridisation, the membrane was sealed in a plastic bag and placed in a X-ray cassette (Kodak X-Omatic) fitted with intensifying screens (regular). In the dark-room, a sheet of X-ray film, Kodak X-AR5 (high sensitivity), was placed next to the membrane and the cassette placed at -70 °C overnight or for as long as necessary up to two weeks. For sequencing gels, Kodak X-Omat S was placed next to the dried immobilised gel and the cassette placed at room temperature.

Film was processed manually or machine processed. Manual developing of the film involved submerging in developer (LX24 Kodak) for 5 min, draining, rinsing in stop solution (3% acetic acid) and submerging in fixer (Kodak Unifix) for 5 min, cleared by rinsing extensively in water and air drying. Machine processing used the Kodak X-Omat automatic film developer, Model M7B RP X-Omat.

2.7.19. Stripping probe from membrane for membrane reuse.

The membrane blot was incubated at 45 °C for 30 min in 0.4 M NaOH and then transferred to a solution of 0.1 x SSC, 0.1% (w/v) SDS, 0.2 M Tris-HCl (pH 7.5) and incubated for a further 15 min. After checking by autoradiography that the probe had been removed, the membrane was rehybridised with another probe.

2.7.20. DNA sequencing.

DNA sequencing was based on the "chain-termination" procedure first described by Sanger et al. (1980) and subsequently modified by Tabor and Richardson (1987). The DNA fragment to be sequenced was initially cloned into
the plasmid pIC20H, but, due to problems of compression of bands on the sequencing gel, the fragment was recloned into the replicative forms (RF) of the phage M13 cloning vectors mp18 and mp19 and fully sequenced. All these vectors contain multiple cloning sites in the alpha-peptide coding region of the beta-galactosidase gene. Insertion of foreign DNA into this polylinker sequence destroys active alpha-peptide synthesis, enabling the detection of recombinants in a suitable *E. coli* host on media containing the chromogenic substrate, X-gal (BCIG). Single-stranded template DNA was prepared from recombinant plasmids and phage particles and was used directly in the sequencing reaction. DNA sequencing involves the synthesis of a complementary DNA strand by DNA polymerase *in vitro*. Synthesis is initiated, in the presence of four dNTPs, from a short (15-30 nucleotides) oligonucleotide primer complimentary in sequence to the plasmid or viral template DNA enabling annealing adjacent to the insert DNA sequence. Sequential extension of DNA using DNA polymerase forms a sequence complementary to the insert DNA. The addition of a radiolabelled dNTP enables visualisation of the newly synthesised DNA by autoradiography. The growing chain is terminated randomly by the incorporation of a 2', 3'-dideoxynucleotide triphosphate (ddNTP) in each of four reaction mixtures that will not support continued DNA synthesis. Since the sequence of each chain is determined by the template sequence, size fractionation of the reaction products by denaturing polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis enables the DNA sequence to be determined.

2.7.20. Subcloning of DNA into M13 mp18 and mp19.

Routinely, 50-100 ng of digested, dephosphorylated M13 vector (RF) was ligated (Section 2.8.11) with an c. equal molar quantity of compatible insert/target DNA. The subsequent ligation products were used to transfect competent *E.coli* TG1 (Section 2.6.2.b. Transfection).
2.7.20.b. Preparation of template DNA.

An overnight culture of *E.coli* TG1 in 2 x YT broth was diluted 1:100 with more pre-warmed broth. A 2 ml aliquot was infected with a single M13 plaque and incubated with vigorous aeration at 37 °C for 6 h. The culture was then transferred to a microfuge tube and centrifuged (13000 x g, 10 min). The supernatant liquid (c. 1.25 ml) was decanted into a fresh microfuge tube containing 250 µl 20% (w/v) PEG 6000, 2.5 M NaCl. The tube contents were thoroughly mixed on an Eppendorf shaker for at least 15 min before being centrifuged again (13000 x g, 10 min). The supernatant liquid was discarded by aspiration leaving the phage pellet in the tube. Care was taken to remove all traces of supernatant. The phage pellet was resuspended in 100 µl TE buffer and extracted with 50 µl TE-saturated phenol (Section 2.3). Following brief centrifugation (13000 x g, 2 min), the aqueous phase was transferred to a fresh microfuge tube and extracted twice with 0.5 ml aliquots of water-saturated ether (sterile distilled water: ether; 1:1). Finally, the sample was ethanol-precipitated (Section 2.8.4), washed with 70% ethanol, dried under vacuum and resuspended in 30 µl TE buffer and stored at -20°C.

2.7.20.c. Annealing of template with primer and sequencing reactions.

The Sequenase Version 2 DNA Sequencing Kit was used (70700, U.S. Biochemical, Corporation, Cambridge). Sequencing reactions were performed using "Sequenase" (a modified bacteriophage T7 DNA polymerase, USB). Templates were annealed with the appropriate oligonucleotide primer. Microfuge tubes containing 7 µl template DNA (approx. 1-2 µg), 1 µl oligonucleotide primer (2 ng/µl in TE) and 2 µl 5x Sequenase buffer (Sequenase kit: 200 mM Tris-HCl (pH 7.5), 100 mM MgCl₂, 250 mM NaCl) were heated to 65 °C for 2 min and cooled slowly to room temperature to allow the primer to anneal to the template. Meanwhile, 2.5 µl aliquots of T,C,G and A termination
mixtures (80 μM each dNTP, 50 mM NaCl, 8 μM ddTTP/CTP/GTP or ATP) were dispensed into autoclaved capless 1.5 ml microfuge tubes positioned in centrifuge tube racks (Centra). When the annealings had cooled sufficiently, 5.5 μl of a labelling master mix (1/5x TE buffer, 10 mM DTT, 1.5 μM dTTP, 1.5 μM dCTP, 1.5 μM dGTP, 1.5 μM [α-³⁵S]-thio-dATP (1000 μCi/mMol), 4 units Sequenase) was added to each annealing mixture and the tubes incubated at room temperature for 5 min (labelling step). Aliquots of 3.5 μl of this reaction mix were then added to each termination mix prepared earlier and the tubes incubated at 37 °C for 5 min (termination step). Reactions were stopped by the addition of 4 μl of formamide loading buffer (USB, Formamide 95%, xylene cyanol FF 0.05%, bromophenol blue 0.05% and EDTA 20 mM). Samples were denatured by heating (75 °C water bath, 2 min) prior to loading on denaturing polyacrylamide gels (Section 2.8.20.e).

2.7.20.d. Plasmid sequencing.

CsCl-purified plasmid DNA, 4 μg, was denatured in 0.2 M NaOH (final concentration) and incubated at 37 °C for 30 min. The mixture was neutralised by adding 0.1 volumes of 2 M ammonium acetate (pH 4.5) and precipitated with two volumes chilled absolute ethanol. The ethanol was run down the side of the tube and mixture kept at -70 °C for 20 min. The DNA was pelleted (13000 x g, 4°C, 20 min), washed with 70% (v/v) ethanol and vacuum dried before being redissolved in 7 μl of SDW, 2μl 1x Sequenase buffer and 1 μl oligonucleotide primer at 0.2 ng/μl. The annealing step and sequencing reactions were done as described above for single-stranded DNA. To reduce the formation of secondary structures and compressions during plasmid sequencing with recombinant *Bordetella* GC-rich DNA, dGTP was replaced with dITP, although dGTP reactions were also done in parallel with dITP reactions.
2.7.20.e. **Denaturing polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis.**

The thin-gel system employed for the resolution of DNA sequencing reaction products was based on that described by Sanger et al. (1980). Two glass plates (20 x 50 cm), one of which had notches, were cleaned thoroughly with Pyroneg detergent and then rinsed with absolute ethanol. The notched (front) plate was then treated on one side with "repelcote" (2% dimethyl-dichlorosilane in 1,1,1-trichloroethane, BDH). Simultaneously, the back plate was treated with a mixture of 750 µl 10% glacial acetic acid and 75 µl silane (γ-(methyl-acryloxy)-propyltrimethoxysilane, Sigma) in 25 ml absolute ethanol. The plates were allowed to dry in a fume cupboard and polished before being sandwiched together (coated sides facing) with 0.35 mm plastic spacers along the 50 cm edges. The plates were secured with bulldog clips and the edges sealed using 2" packaging tape. Gradient gel mixes were made from 40 ml 0.5x TBE gel mix (A) and 7 ml 5x TBE gel mix (B) (Section 2.3). Polymerisation was initiated by adding 80µl of 25% (w/v) ammonium persulphate and 80µl TEMED to gel mix (A) and 14µl of each to gel mix (B). To pour gradients, 5 ml of A followed by 7 ml of B was taken up in a 10 ml wide-bore pipette together with two air bubbles to allow slight mixing. The contents were then gently expelled between the two glass plates, followed by the remaining A mix using a syringe. Care was taken to avoid any air bubbles. Finally, a plastic gel comb was placed at the top of the gel and the mixes allowed to polymerise. Routinely, 40 samples (10 x 4) were loaded on each gel. If the gel was not to be used the same day Saran Wrap was placed over the end of gel and comb to prevent it drying out.

2.7.20.f. **Loading and running of sequencing gels.**

Sequencing gels were prepared as described (section 2.8.20.e). Gel wells were carefully flushed out with 1x TBE running buffer immediately prior to loading approximately 2 to 3 µl of sample per well. The order of loading was
T, C, G, A, for the reaction mixtures for each template sequenced. A constant current of 25 mA for c. 3.5 h was applied to the gels. After electrophoresis was complete, the gel sandwich was disassembled and the gel (still stuck to the back plate) was fixed by immersion in 10% glacial acetic acid, 10% methanol for 15 min. Gels were dried in an oven at 80 °C for at least 2 h before autoradiography with Kodak X-Omat S film.

2.7.20.g. Analysis and editing of sequence data.

Computer analyses of sequence data was performed with the aid of software supplied by DNAsStar Inc., Madison, Wisconsin, USA. Programmes included Mapseq, which displays the DNA sequence with enzyme restriction sites and translation products; Align, optimal alignment of two DNA sequences aligned by the method of Wilbur and Lipman (1983); Dotplot, two DNA sequences compared to produce a dot plot of similarities either graphically or as a listing; Nucscan, search of nucleotide sequence databanks: Genbank, Los Alamos, USA, and EMBL, Heidelberg, Germany, for DNA sequence homology; Proscan, search of protein database NBRF (National Biomedical Research Foundation) for amino acid sequence homology by the method of Lipman and Pearson (1985).
CHAPTER 3

CHARACTERISATION OF A B. PERTUSSIS DNA FRAGMENT
PREVIOUSLY PROPOSED AS HOMOLOGOUS TO
SALMONELLA TYPHIMURIUM HIN INVERTASE DNA.
3.1. Introduction.

*S. typhimurium* has a DNA invertase, Hin, which can cause DNA inversion that in turn controls flagellar antigen synthesis. Southern blots of *B. pertussis* DNA (strains 134 phase I, L84 phase I and phase IV) showed hybridisation to a *S. typhimurium* DNA probe containing the *hin* gene (Foxall et al., 1990). This probe hybridised to a 15 kb *EcoRI* fragment in the *B. pertussis* chromosomal DNA. No variation was observed between different *B. pertussis* strains, modes or phases. The *S. typhimurium* DNA probe used in that work was a 8.8 kb *EcoRI/BamHI* fragment of DNA from plasmid pKK1001B (Foxall et al., 1990; Fig. 3.1). The plasmid consists of pBR322 vector containing an insert of 8.8 kb *S. typhimurium* DNA between the unique *EcoRI-BamHI* sites. The *S. typhimurium* DNA contained the genes for the *hin* DNA invertase, inverted repeats, the promoter and the structural gene for the H2 flagellin. The nucleotide sequence of the *S. typhimurium* invertible region along with the flanking DNA sequence was published by Simon et al. (1980) and Silverman et al. (1981); the latter, longer sequence is shown in Fig. 3.2.

A more specific probe was produced by digesting pKK1001B with *BscI* and *StuI* (MacGregor, 1990; Fig. 3.2.). Digestion of pKK1001B with *BscI* and *StuI* produced four fragments: a doublet (~5.8 kb) and two smaller ones (~678 bp and ~620 bp). The 678 bp fragment consisted of 526 bp of the 573 bp of the *hin* gene (47 bp of the N terminus was absent in the fragment, see Fig. 3.2). It also included the distal domain of the enhancer for FIS (Factor for Inversion Stimulation, a sequence-specific DNA binding protein essential for inversion) and 152 bp of DNA not known to code for a protein (Szekely and Simon, 1983) at the 3' end (Fig. 3.2). A gene library of *B. pertussis* DNA (strain Taberman phase I, fimbrial serotype 0,3) in *Escherichia coli* had been previously constructed by Brownlie et al. (1986) using the broad host range cosmid vector pLAFRI (Friedman et al., 1982). The cosmid library contained inserts of *B. pertussis* DNA with an average size of 24.9 kb. The Taberman DNA gene library
Fig. 3.1. Plasmid pKK1001B.

The plasmid, \( \sim 12.8 \) kb, consists of the plasmid pBR322 DNA (thick line) with a small \textit{EcoRI-BamHI} fragment replaced by an 8.8 kb \textit{S. typhimurium LT2} chromosomal DNA fragment (thin line) in \textit{H2} "on" orientation. The boxes with an internal cross represent the inverted repeats. Redrawn from Kutsukake (personal communication).
Fig. 3.2. Nucleotide sequence of the invertible region of *S. typhimurium* and adjacent DNA in H2 "on" orientation (redrawn from Silverman et al., 1981).

Predicted amino acid sequences are shown in all three reading frames for each DNA strand, (.) = stop codon. Areas of interest are marked, including the open reading frame (ORF) for the *hin* gene and *H2* flagellin gene and the restriction sites for *ClaI* (*BscI*), *SacI* and *StuI*. Inverted repeats left and right are marked IRL, IRR respectively. PCR oligo (1) and (2) identify sequences used to construct oligonucleotides to amplify *hin* gene from *S. typhimurium* DNA by PCR (Section 5.3).

The nucleotide sequences required for enhancer function are contained within a 60 bp segment of DNA which includes the areas marked (a) and (b) and the area between. Site (a) is the proximal domain and (b) the distal domain for FIS protein binding (Johnson and Simon, 1987).
was screened for homology to the *S. typhimurium* DNA using the 678 bp ("680 bp") *BscI/Stul* fragment of pKK1001B as a probe (MacGregor, 1990). One clone which hybridised to the probe was called pDI116, or p16 in this study. Restriction enzyme digestion of the DNA of the clone showed a 0.58 kb *BscI* fragment to be present. Analysis of the chromosomal DNA of *B. pertussis* (Taberman and Tohama strains) by Southern blots showed the 680 bp probe bound to a 0.58 kb *BscI* or *ClaI* fragment, *ClaI* an isoschizomer of *BscI* (MacGregor, 1990). Examination of the DNA of other *Bordetella* species showed binding of this 680 bp probe to a 0.9 kb *BscI* fragment of *B. bronchiseptica* DNA but not to *B. parapertussis* DNA strain NCTC 10520. Chromosomal DNA of *B. avium* strains 4041 and 4049 could not be digested by *BscI* but were digested by *Stul* and the probe hybridised to two fragments, of 3.8 and 4.0 kb.

### 3.2. Restriction enzyme digestion of the DNA of *B. pertussis* cosmid clone, p16, to show the presence of a 0.58 kb *BscI* DNA fragment.

Digestion of the DNA of clone p16 with *BscI* gave fragment sizes that corroborated the map of MacGregor (1990). There is still ambiguity as to the exact order of the *BscI* fragments around the 0.58 kb *BscI* fragment. Accurate sizing was difficult due to it being necessary to overload the DNA on the electrophoresis gel to visualise the 0.58 kb fragment.

### 3.3. Subcloning the 0.58 kb *BscI* fragment into the plasmid pIC20H.

To produce more of the 0.58 kb DNA in order to prepare a probe and for future plasmid sequencing analysis, the 0.58 kb fragment was subcloned into a smaller vector, plasmid pIC20H (Fig. 3.3). The DNA of pIC20H was digested with *BscI* and dephosphorylated with CIP, while p16 was also digested with *BscI*. Fragments were separated by electrophoresis on LMP agarose (Fig. 3.4) and the relevant DNA bands were cut out. The agarose was melted and diluted with sterile distilled water and the DNA recovered by adsorption onto Geneclean.
Fig. 3.3. Plasmid cloning vector, pIC20H, showing multiple cloning sites (Marsh et al., 1984).
The DNA fragments were ligated with DNA ligase prior to transformation of *E. coli* JM83 competent cells. Twelve white and two blue colonies were chosen and purified by streaking to single colonies on selective plates containing ampicillin and X-gal. Plasmid DNA was prepared from all fourteen colonies and digestion of the plasmids with *BscI* showed that this site no longer was available for digestion as the recombinant DNA was not digested. Using the *BscI* site for the insertion appeared to have affected the DNA preventing further digestion, perhaps by altering a base at the recognition sequence. Two *HindIII* sites were present in the pIC20H polylinker flanking the *BscI* site so the plasmids were then digested with *HindIII* (Fig. 3.5). This showed that ten of the plasmids including the two plasmids which had originated from the two blue colonies contained a DNA insert. The blue colour presumably indicated that the insert had not affected the reading frame, allowing functional beta galactosidase alpha-peptide to be produced. A Southern blot of the digested recombinant plasmid DNA showed that each insert hybridised with the 0.58 kb fragment (data not shown), confirming that the inserts represented subclones of the original 0.58 kb.

**3.4 Analysis of *B. pertussis* chromosomal DNA and clone p16 to obtain a larger fragment containing the 0.58 kb *BscI* fragment.**

The DNA *hin* invertase gene is 573 bp but inclusion of all the region between, and including, the inverted repeats increases this to 995 bp. Therefore the 0.58 kb fragment, obtained by *BscI* digestion of clone p16 fragment, might not have included all the *B. pertussis* DNA homologous to *Hin* DNA. It was therefore decided to see if a fragment larger than and containing the 0.58 kb fragment could be obtained from clone p16. Therefore *B. pertussis* chromosomal DNA (strain Taberman, Table 2.1), cosmid vector pLAFRI (Table 2.3) and cosmid clone p16 (Table 2.3) were digested with various restriction enzymes, Southern blotted and hybridised with the 0.58 kb *BscI* fragment, hybridisation conditions as in 2.7.17.b. It would have been better to use the *Hin* DNA
Fig. 3.4. Electrophoresis of BscI-digested plasmid vector pIC20H and cosmid recombinant p16 showing the 0.58 kb fragment.

The lambda HindIII marker is labelled (m) and sizes are marked on the left of the gel. Electrophoresis in a 1% agarose gel. (Lanes 1-3) BscI-digested and dephosphorylated vector pIC20H; (4) BscI-digested vector pIC20H; (5,6) BscI-digested clone p16. Fragment sizes of interest are marked with arrows to the right of the gel.

Fig. 3.5. HindIII digestion of B. pertussis chromosomal DNA, vector and recombinant plasmids.

The lambda HindIII markers are indicated to the left of the gel. The arrow to the right of the gel indicates insert fragments. Lanes contained DNA prepared from the following plasmids or strains:
(1) Chromosomal B. pertussis DNA strain Taberman; (2) cosmid vector pLAFR1; (3) cosmid library clone p16; (4) plasmid vector pIC20H; (5->12, 14->19) subclones pIC20H containing 0.58 kb inserts; all digested with HindIII. (13) Plasmid p16 digested with BscI.
invertase fragment probe from pKK1001B but there was insufficient DNA and initial attempts to transform the plasmid into *E. coli* to obtain more DNA were unsuccessful. Once a restriction fragment of suitable size e.g. ~2 kb was found DNA sequencing analysis would determine if there was homology to the Hin DNA. Digestion of p16 with most restriction enzymes gave fragments which were either too large or produced too many fragments homologous to the probe. However two enzymes, *PstI* and *NruI*, gave potentially useful fragments (Fig. 3.6. lanes 4,5,6 and 16,17,18). The main *NruI* fragment homologous to the probe was smaller in the digest of the chromosomal DNA than in clone p16 (Fig. 3.7. lanes 16,17,18). This may have been due to rearrangements occurring during preparation of the gene library. Digestion with *PstI* (lanes 4,5,6) yielded more promising results as both the chromosomal and p16 DNA showed binding to the probe with fragments of the same size. However the probe also showed excessive binding to the vector DNA. It was decided therefore to sequence the 0.58 kb fragment in the pIC20H vector to determine if it exhibited homology to the Hin DNA.

3.5. Sequencing of the 0.58 kb *BsrI* DNA fragment subcloned in pIC20H.

The insert DNA was partially sequenced from one of the pIC20H plasmids containing an 0.58 kb insert, (Lane 11; Fig. 3.5). The sequence obtained using the Sequenase Kit (USB) consisted of 250 bp on one strand and 350 bp on the other strand of DNA. In the plasmid DNA sequencing stops and compressions in the GC rich DNA were found to be a major problem so the insert DNA was recloned into M13 for single strand sequencing. The use of inositol triphosphate (ITP) in the sequencing reaction mix was found to be successful in resolving the problems of stops and compression.
Fig. 3.6. Restriction enzyme digestion of chromosomal DNA from *B. pertussis* strain Taberman, cosmid vector pLAFR1 and *B. pertussis* cosmid library clone p16.

The lambda *HindIII* markers are indicated to the left of the gel. Lanes contained: chromosomal DNA prepared from *B. pertussis* Taberman strain (lanes 1,4,7,10,13,16); plasmid pLAFRI (lanes 2,5,8,11,14); and cosmid clone p16 (lanes 3,6,9,12,15 and 18). The DNA was digested with the following: (lanes 1,2,3) *EcoRI*; (4,5,6) *PstI*; (7,8,9) *BscI*; (10,11,12) *XbaI*; (13,14,15) *SacI*; (16,17,18) *NruI*.

Fig. 3.7. Southern blot analysis of *B. pertussis* chromosomal DNA, cosmid vector pLAFR1 and cosmid clone p16 (gel, Fig. 3.6.) hybridised with the 0.58 kb *BscI* DNA fragment probe.

The lambda *HindIII* markers (m) sizes are indicated to the left of the blot. Lanes contained DNA as noted in Fig. 3.6.
3.6. Subcloning the 0.58 kb BscI fragment into the bacteriophage M13 mp18 and mp19.

The M13 vector DNA has multiple cloning sites with mp18 having a polylinker of opposite orientation to that of mp19. This allows both strands of the insert DNA to be sequenced with one primer. The sequencing of the DNA in the plasmid vector had shown a SalI restriction site within the 0.58 kb DNA fragment. This information was used to subclone portions of the 0.58 kb fragment into the M13 vector. Three restriction enzymes were used: EcoRI, SalI and HindIII. The digestion with EcoRI and HindIII included the whole of the insert. Overlapping sequences aid in confirming the sequence so smaller fragments were also subcloned for sequencing. The insert was cleaved with EcoRI/SalI and SalI/HindIII and cloned into the relevant sites of the relevant vector. This yielded the following insert fragments which were corroborated by mapping with restriction enzymes (Fig. 3.8). HindIII and EcoRI digestion of pIC0.58 produced a 54 bp and a 593 bp fragment, and included the whole of the insert. EcoRI and SalI digestion produced a 42 bp and a 406 bp fragment which included part of the insert. While HindIII and SalI digestion produced a 21 bp, a 436 bp (SalI/SalI fragment) and a 186 bp fragment which included the rest of the insert fragment not covered by the EcoRI/SalI restriction digestion. Where sequential digestions required enzymes to be in different buffers; after the first digestion the DNA was precipitated with ethanol, resuspended in sterile distilled water and the second buffer then added. DNA fragments were ligated into dephosphorylated M13 vector DNA and the recombinant DNA transformed into competent E. coli TG1. From each set of transformations, 12 plaques were picked for preparation of DNA for sequencing.
Fig. 3.8. Schematic representation of restriction digest products of the vector pIC20H containing the 0.58 kb insert digested with EcoRI, SalI and HindIII.
Order of polylinker sites present in pIC20H:

\[ \text{HindIII} - \text{Sall} - \text{EcoRI} - \text{ClaI} - \text{HindIII} \]

\[ \text{0.58 kb} \]

\[ \text{Sall} \]

The \(~0.58\) kb fragment (containing a Sall site) was inserted into the ClaI/BscI site of pIC20H.

\text{HindIII and EcoRI} double digestion products of the vector pIC20H containing 0.58 kb DNA fragment.

\[ \text{HindIII} | 54 \text{ bp} | \text{EcoRI} \quad \text{EcoRI} | 6 \text{ bp} + 560 \text{ bp} + 27 \text{ bp} = 593 \text{ bp} | \text{HindIII} \]

\text{EcoRI and Sall} double digestion products of the vector pIC20H containing 0.58 kb DNA fragment.

\[ \text{Sall} | 42 \text{ bp} | \text{EcoRI} \quad \text{EcoRI} | 6 + 400 = 406 \text{ bp} | \text{Sall} \]

\text{HindIII and Sall} double digestion products of the vector pIC20H containing 0.58 kb DNA fragment.

\[ \text{HindIII} | 21 \text{ bp} | \text{Sall} \quad \text{Sall} | 36 + 400 = 436 \text{ bp} | \text{Sall} \]

\[ \text{Sall} | 160 + 27 \text{ bp} = 186 \text{ bp} | \text{HindIII}. \]

The fragment with the Sall-Sall ends does not insert into the Sall/HindIII digested vector.
3.7. DNA sequence of the 0.58 kb *BscI* DNA fragment.

The full sequence of the ~0.58 kb fragment is shown in Fig. 3.9. When clone p16 was analysed with various restriction enzymes for a larger fragment which included the 0.58 kb fragment (Section 3.4) enzymes with sites within the 0.58 kb sequence were also found (data not shown). These restriction sites have again been shown to be present on sequencing the 0.58 kb fragment confirming that this was the same insert that was present in p16. The restriction sites are *SphI*, *EcoRV* and *SalI*.

Both DNA strands of the ~0.58 kb fragment were compared with the DNA sequence of the *S. typhimurium* Hin invertase DNA sequence (Silverman *et al.* 1981, Fig 3.2.) using the Align programme (DNASTAR). No significant homology was noted. The DNA sequence was then compared to DNA sequences in GenBank and EMBL using the programme Nucscan again no significant homology was noted. When the sequence was translated it resulted in three reading frames for each DNA strand, but only one reading frame had an open reading frame throughout its whole length. The open reading frame was compared against the known amino acid sequences in NBRF using the Proscan programme. No homology to any particular sequence was apparent although there were small regions of homology to insertion sequence and transposon transposases. The alignment of the sequence with the greatest homology is shown in Fig. 3.10. The area of greatest homology (shown between vertical lines in Fig. 3.10.) was 29.4% identity within 34 amino acids. Underneath is information on the sequences which the Proscan analysis of the ORF (191 amino acids) indicated had some homology to other amino acid sequences.
Fig. 3.9. DNA sequence of the *B. pertussis* ~0.58 kb *ClaI* fragment.

The predicted amino acid sequences and stop codons (.) in all three reading frames for both strands are shown and the restriction sites for *SphI*, *EcoRV* and *SalI*. 
Fig. 3.10. Comparison of \( \sim 0.58 \text{ kb} \) DNA-translated largest open reading frame to insertion sequence IS3411 transposase.

(1) \( \sim 0.58 \text{ kb} \) DNA-translated largest open reading frame (ORF) from 1 to 191 amino acids compared to (2) insertion sequence IS3411 transposase 1 to 240 amino acids, as aligned by the Proscan programme, DNASTAR.

Where an amino acid is written between the two sequences, it is common to both sequences. Highly homologous and less homologous amino acids are represented by double and single dots, respectively. The area of greatest homology is shown between the vertical lines marked on the sequences.
10v  20v
   CLGSALRTRKLPDIRAGDEVAL
   G. :RT .. A:::RV.

70^  80^  90^  100^  110^  120^  
   NHKVYGVRKVRRLREGIRVARCTVARLMAMGLAGVLRGKVRRTISRKA
   AAGHRVNR

30v  40v  50v  60v  70v  80v
   ARQHHRPHCGVRFRLAQRRAQAGTYRIRQCVDRRIVDAQDGYPMPGNAHHR
   LDVFDEVVR

130^  140^  150^  160^  170^  180^  
   QFVAERPDQLWADFTYVSTWRFVYFAFIDVFAGYIVGWRVSSMETTFVID
   LAEQALW

90v  100v  110v  120v  130v  140v
   HSRPASSWLEMLRGKSPRWPQRCQHEITYPNLAARPSIRIFELFIKHKEY
   CAQPLIRC
   .RP::: ..:::V . RWP..G :: ..:::. . ::

190^  200^  210^  220^  230^  240^  
   TRRPPARSITVIKVLMSYRWPTHSCQLRPDYWHQQVEQATRMTRWRASMVFTKRR
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Homologous sequence</th>
<th>Amount of ORF (191 aa)</th>
<th>Most homologous region (N^aa) within 191 aa sequence.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>E. coli</em> transposase IS3411</td>
<td>139 aa</td>
<td>76 to 105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>E. coli</em> transposase Tn3</td>
<td>189 aa</td>
<td>141 to 157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Agrobacterium tumefaciens</em> IS136</td>
<td>147 aa</td>
<td>87 to 109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>E. coli</em> transposase Tn21</td>
<td>121 aa</td>
<td>3 to 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>E. coli</em> transposase Tn 2501</td>
<td>127 aa</td>
<td>6 to 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>E. coli</em> transposase Tn 3926</td>
<td>121 aa</td>
<td>6 to 25</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The areas of greatest homology, although interesting, are small and thus probably have limited significance. As no sequence homology of the 0.58 kb fragment could be found to the DNA invertase of *S. typhimurium* or surrounding sequences, some doubt was cast on the conclusions of the original hybridisation results of MacGregor (1990). It was decided therefore to reexamine the hybridisation pattern of the Hin DNA invertase probe to *Bordetella* DNA.

### 3.8. Southern hybridisation of *Bordetella* DNA and pKK1001B with the 0.58 kb fragment DNA probe.

Attempts to hybridise the 0.58 kb *BscI* fragment probe to the pKK1001B 680 bp *BscI/StuI* fragment or indeed any of pKK1001B had been unsuccessful. The stringency of the conditions were therefore reduced. The conditions of Foxall *et al.* (1990) were investigated and the membrane changed from Hybond-N to Zeta-Probe as used by MacGregor (1990). None of these changes enabled the hybridisation to occur. Various *Bordetella* species were examined (Table 2.4) and chromosomal DNA prepared. The results of electrophoresis of
*ClaI*-digested *Bordetella* DNA followed by Southern blotting of the gel and hybridisation with the 0.58 kb probe, are shown in Fig. 3.11. The probe did not bind to pKK1001B (lane 1), *S. typhimurium* DNA (lane 2), *E. coli* DNA (lane 3) or the negative control *Peptostreptococcus magnus* W1384 (lane 4). The 0.58 kb probe did, however, bind to a 0.58 kb fragment in various strains of *B. pertussis* DNA (lanes 5,6,7,8,10,12) and hybridised to Arg 41 DNA although this was an incomplete digest (11). Hybridisation to 0.58 kb fragments in *ClaI*-digested DNA from *B. pertussis* Taberman and Tohama strains was also shown by MacGregor (1990) when using the pKK1001B *ClaI-Stul* 680 bp fragment as a probe. In contrast to his results, the 0.58 kb probe in this study also hybridised to a 0.58 kb fragment in *B. parapertussis* (lane 13) but not to *B. bronchiseptica* (lane 9) or *B. avium* (lane 14) DNA. The positive controls, p16 and subclone pIC20H containing 0.58 kb insert (lanes 15,16,17) did hybridise.

3.9. Discussion.

Previous work had shown the hybridisation of a *S. typhimurium* DNA probe, which included Hin invertase DNA, to a *B. pertussis* cosmid library clone, p16, and a 0.58 kb *ClaI* fragment in *B. pertussis* chromosomal DNA (MacGregor, 1990). This appeared to be consistent as the clone also contained a 0.58 kb *ClaI* fragment. Analysis of the cosmid clone, p16, in this study confirmed the presence of the 0.58 kb *ClaI* fragment which when used as a probe hybridised to a 0.58 kb fragment in *B. pertussis* chromosomal DNA. However, the converse using the 0.58 kb fragment of *B. pertussis* DNA to probe the *S. typhimurium* DNA did not show any evidence of hybridisation. When the photograph of the analysis of the cosmid library by MacGregor (1990) was re-examined, several clones hybridised suggesting that the conditions were of insufficient stringency. Sequence analysis of the 0.58 kb fragment showed no clear homology to known sequences and appeared to be *Bordetella* DNA with only limited homology to *S. typhimurium* DNA. This indicates that the hybridisation procedure used by MacGregor (1990)
should be repeated. It was essential to transform pKK1001B into *E. coli* in order to prepare enough plasmid DNA for use as a probe.
Fig. 3.11. Southern blot analysis of restriction enzyme-digested chromosomal DNA of *Bordetella* species hybridised with the 0.58 kb *ClaI* *B. pertussis* DNA fragment probe.

The lambda *HindIII* markers are indicated to the left of the blot. The arrow to the right of the blot indicates the 0.58 kb fragment. Lanes contained *ClaI*-digested DNA (except were indicated) prepared from the following plasmids or strains:

1. pKK1001B
2. *S. typhimurium* LT2 (digested with *BstI* and *StuI*); 
3. *E. coli*; 
4. *Peptostreptococcus magnus* W1384;
*B. pertussis*: 
5. Taberman; 
6. Tohama; 
7. Wellcome 28; 
8. L84 I; 
9. Arg 40; 
10. Arg 41; 
11. L84 IV; 
9. *B. bronchiseptica* 452; 
13. *B. parapertussis*: 5952; 
14. *B. avium* 4148; 
15. Clone p16 from *E. coli* (*dam*); 
16. Clone p16 from *E. coli* (*dam*); 
17. pIC20H containing 0.58 kb insert (digested with *HindIII*).
CHAPTER 4

IDENTIFICATION OF *Borrelia* DNA FRAGMENTS WHICH HYBRIDISE TO HIN DNA AND DNA INVERTASE TARGET SEQUENCES.
4.1. Introduction.

The pKK1001B plasmid consists of a pBR322 vector containing an insert of 8.8 kb of *S. typhimurium* DNA. Restriction enzyme digestion of pKK1001B with *BscI* and *StuI* produces a 680 bp fragment (Fig. 4.1) which includes Hin DNA. As there was insufficient pKK1001B DNA available to use as a probe, it was necessary to transform the DNA into *E. coli*, preferably a *dam*° *E. coli* strain, so that it could be digested by restriction enzymes sensitive to Dam-methylated DNA e.g. *BscI*. The DNA of *B. pertussis* clone p16 which had been previously shown to hybridise to the ~680 bp pKK1001B fragment (MacGregor, 1990) was also transformed into the *dam*° *E. coli* cells.

MacGregor (1990) showed homology between the 680 bp probe, containing the Hin DNA, and *B. pertussis* *Clai*-digested chromosomal DNA. This Southern hybridisation was repeated to determine if the same result could be obtained. The *Bordetella* chromosomal DNA chosen for this study was prepared from strains chosen for their different serotypes. AGG 1 was always present in wild-type phase I isolates, whilst AGG 2 and 3 could be lost or regained independently at a high rate ($10^{-3}$-$10^{-4}$) per generation. This rate might suggest that some form of DNA rearrangement, perhaps by a DNA invertase, might be involved in the serotype variation. This could possibly be detected by variation in profiles of DNA hybridisation of these serotype variant strains using the Hin probe. *Bordetella* strains which varied in their mode and phase were also examined for differences in hybridisation to the probe. In this study hybridisation of the *Clai*-digested *Bordetella* chromosomal DNA was repeated and further restriction enzyme digestions were also examined. The *Bordetella* DNA was also hybridised with the 620 bp fragment of *S. typhimurium* produced by pKK1001B digested with *BscI* and *StuI* to see if it too showed homology. If a fragment homologous to DNA invertase were present in the *Bordetella* DNA this could be confirmed by the presence of specific inverted repeat sequences common to invertible DNA. Therefore hybridisation using oligonucleotides constructed
Fig. 4.1. The plasmid pKK1001B from *E. coli* a) (*dam<sup>−</sup>*) and b) (*dam<sup>+</sup>*) strains digested with *BscI* and *StuI*.

The mol. wt. markers: kilobase, Gibco-BRL (m1) and *HindIII* digested lambda (m2) are shown along with their sizes.

(a) Plasmid pKK1001B from an *E. coli* (*dam<sup>−</sup>*) strain digested with *BscI* and *StuI* and the fragments separated by electrophoresis on a 1.5% agarose gel. (b) Plasmid pKK1001B from an *E. coli* (*dam<sup>+</sup>*) strain digested with *BscI* and *StuI* and the fragments separated by electrophoresis on a 1.5% agarose gel.
from these sequences were also used.

4.2. Transformation of pKK1001B and p16 into a \textit{dam}^{+} \textit{E. coli} strain.

Competent \textit{E. coli} DH5\textalpha{} cells, 100 \mu{}l, were transformed, by mixing with 1 \mu{}l of 1 \mu{}g pKK1001B DNA (Section 2.6.2.). Selected transformant colonies were streaked on agar plates containing ampicillin and the plasmid DNA prepared (Section 2.7.2).

This was digested with \(Bsc\text{I}\) and \(Stu\text{I}\) and the fragments separated by electrophoresis on a 1.5 \% agarose gel to separate of \(\sim 680\) and \(\sim 620\) bp fragments. Although both fragments are of similar size, the \(\sim 680\) bp fragment appeared to be in a greater molar ratio (Fig. 4.1.a). This could have been due to inefficient enzyme digestion because of methylation occurring, as the plasmid DNA was from a \textit{dam}^{+} strain. To investigate this pKK1001B was also transformed into a \textit{dam}^{-} strain.

4.3. Transformation of pKK1001B and p16 into a \textit{dam}^{-} \textit{E. coli} strain.

Competent cells of the \textit{E. coli} \textit{dam}^{-} strain GM242, were transformed with pKK1001B. Digestion of pKK1001B with \(Bsc\text{I}\) and \(Stu\text{I}\) now produced two distinct large fragments as opposed to a doublet (Section 3.1.) but there was no change in appearance of the \(\sim 680\) or \(\sim 620\) bp fragments (Fig. 4.1.b). Therefore methylation was not producing the difference in intensity of these fragments.

The \textit{B. pertussis} clone, p16, which MacGregor (1990) found to have homology to the 680 bp probe was also transformed into the \textit{dam}^{-} \textit{E. coli} strain. Digestion of the demethylated p16 DNA with \textit{Clai} showed many more bands than with p16 when produced from the \textit{dam}^{+} strain. The appearance of the 0.58 kb \textit{Clai} fragment from the p16 digest, however, was not affected by the change in methylation state of DNA. Both methylated and non-methylated p16 DNA were used in Southern blots.

Digestion with BscI and StuI of pKK1001B isolated from the dam" E. coli strain produced several fragments including the 680 bp fragment consisting of 526 of the 573 bp of the hin gene (DNA sequence Fig. 3.2) which was to be used as a probe. All the fragments were separated by electrophoresis on LMP agarose and the 680 bp DNA band cut out. The agarose was melted and diluted with sterile distilled water as in Section 2.7.16.a. and used for radiolabelling. The Bordetella chromosomal DNA was digested with ClaI and alkaline-blotted onto Zeta-Probe membrane. Hybridisation conditions (Section 2.7.17.a.) were the same as those used by MacGregor (1990), where this probe hybridised to a 0.58 kb ClaI fragment in B. pertussis DNA from strains Taberman and Tohama, after a long autoradiographic exposure (two weeks).

In this study the plasmid pKK1001B DNA and S. typhimurium DNA were digested with BscI and StuI while the rest of the DNA was digested with ClaI alone. Hybridisation of the 680 bp probe to the blot is shown in Fig. 4.2. The probe hybridised to the 620 bp and the 680 bp fragments in the pKK1001B digest (not shown in figure as the high degree of hybridisation gave rise to a too intense an autoradiographic exposure). The probe also hybridised strongly to S. typhimurium DNA in the ~620 bp to ~680 bp region and also to fragments of 1.3 kb and 2.1 kb (lane 1). Hybridisation to E. coli showed one main band of 4 kb (lane 2). For B. pertussis phase I strains: Taberman, Tohama, Wellcome 28, L84 (lanes 4-7), Arg 40, Arg 41 (lanes 9-10); B. pertussis L84 phase IV (lane 11); and B. avium 4148 (lane 13), the probe hybridised to a ~0.96 kb fragment and for all these strains except B. avium there was weaker hybridisation to a smaller fragment of 0.58 kb (seen more clearly when the film was over-exposed for 14 days). In contrast, B. bronchiseptica 452 and B. parapertussis 5952 showed fragments hybridising at >10 kb (lanes 8 and 12 respectively). DNA from plasmid p16 from E. coli (dam+) and (dam-) strains, and subclone pIC20H
Fig. 4.2. Southern blot of Clal-digested *Bordetella* chromosomal DNA hybridised with the ~680 bp fragment.

The 680 bp fragment probe was produced from pKK1001B digested with BscI and StuI. The mol. wt. (kilobase) marker (Gibco-BRL) is indicated to the left of the blot. The arrows to the right of the blot indicate fragments of interest. Lanes contained Clal-digested DNA (except lane 16) prepared from the following strains: (1) *S. typhimurium* LT2 (digested with BscI and StuI). (2) *E. coli*; (3) *P. magnus* W1384; *B. pertussis*: (4) Taberman; (5) Tohama; (6) Wellcome 28; (7) L84 I; (9) Arg 40; (10) Arg 41; (11) L84 IV; (8) *B. bronchiseptica* 452; (12) *B. parapertussis* 5952; (13) *B. avium* 4148; (14) Clone p16 from *E. coli (dam^+)*; (15) Clone p16 from *E. coli (dam^-)*. (16) pIC20H containing 0.58 kb insert (digested with HindIII).
containing 0.58 kb insert (Section 3.3) hybridised at their ~0.58 kb inserts. There was also some weak hybridisation to the DNA of the vectors, although this was possibly non-specific hybridisation due to the low stringency conditions (lanes 14, 15 and 16). The hybridisation with the 680 bp probe to the *Bordetella* DNA showed no difference between various *B. pertussis* serotypes, modes or phases.

### 4.5. Hybridisation of *BscI*-digested *Bordetella* DNA with the 680 bp probe.

Several DNA preparations from other *Bordetella* strains, including phase variants were investigated. These included *B. pertussis* strains: Tohama, DCH2, Taberman, L84 phases I and IV, 134 phases I and IV, 30042 phases I and IV, 364 phase IV, 11615 phase IV all grown under X-mode conditions and Taberman grown under X and C mode conditions (see Section 1.7.2.). Other *Bordetella* strains tested included *B. parapertussis* strain 5952, several *B. bronchiseptica* strains: A51 phases I and III, 276 phases I and III, FW5 phases I and III and strain 452, and two *B. avium* strains, 4148 and 4480. The chromosomal DNA was digested with *BscI*, Southern blotted and hybridised with the 680 bp probe.

The 680 bp probe bound to a ~0.96 kb *BscI* fragment in all *B. pertussis* strains irrespective of mode or phase. For *B. parapertussis* and *B. bronchiseptica* strains, the probe bound to a band of >10 kb. This could possibly be explained by the DNA not being fully digested, but increasing the enzyme/DNA proportions did not change the result. Two *B. avium* strains were investigated but there was not enough DNA for hybridisation. These results were essentially similar to those obtained with *ClaI*-digested DNA.

*EcoRI*-digests of the chromosomal DNA were also investigated. Only DNA from *S. typhimurium* and *B. pertussis* strains Taberman (X-mode), Tohama and Arg 40 digested to completion. Incomplete or no *EcoRI* digestion was shown especially by the *B. parapertussis*, *B. bronchiseptica* and *B. avium* strains (data not shown). It is possible that these *Bordetella* species show some methylation at the *EcoRI* restriction site.
4.6. Hybridisation of restriction enzyme digested *B. pertussis* Taberman X-mode DNA, with the 680 bp probe.

Enzymes *SalI*, *MaeI*, *EcoRI*, *XhoI*, *SmaI*, *SacI* digested the DNA to completion whereas *HindIII* showed no digestion. Hybridisation to the digested DNA was to high molecular weight fragments except for *SalI* digestion where a 1.6 kb fragment was noted and *SmaI* digestion where a 2.6 kb fragment was noted (Fig. 4.3). The hybridisation to the >10 kb *EcoRI* fragment confirmed previous reports of the hybridisation of the Hin DNA region probe to a ~15 kb *EcoRI* *B. pertussis* fragment (Foxall *et al.*, 1990).

4.7. Hybridisation of ClaI-digested *Bordetella* DNA with the 620 bp probe.

The 680 bp fragment produced by digestion of the plasmid pKK1001B with *BscI* and *StuI* contains the majority of the *hin* gene. As there are no *BscI/ClaI* or *StuI* sites in the vector, the other restriction site producing the 620 bp fragment must also be in the insert. The 620 bp fragment is therefore probably produced by the presence of another *BscI* or *StuI* site on one side of the 680 bp fragment. Restriction digestion of pKK1001B followed by electrophoresis on a 2 % agarose gel resulted in the 680 bp and 620 bp fragments being well separated. It was of interest to discover if the 620 bp fragment also showed homology to the *B. pertussis* DNA. A separate Southern blot was prepared using the same DNA samples as used in the previous hybridisations (Section 4.5.) but this time hybridised with the 620 bp probe. The probe was radiolabelled as in Section 2.7.16.a.

Hybridisation of the fragment (Fig. 4.4.) to the control DNA, pKK1001B, showed binding to both the 620 bp and the 680 bp fragments (hybridisation too strong to be shown in Fig.). For the *S. typhimurium* DNA there was strong hybridisation in the region ~620-680 bp, to ~1.35 kb fragments and less strongly to 1.85 kb, 2.5 kb and 4 kb fragments (lane 1). In *E. coli* DNA there was
Fig. 4.3. Southern blot of restriction enzyme-digested *B. pertussis* chromosomal DNA hybridised with the ~680 bp fragment.

The mol. wt. (kilobase) marker (Gibco-BRL) is indicated on the left of the blot. The arrows on the right of the blot indicate fragments of interest (see text). Lanes contained *B. pertussis* Taberman DNA (1) undigested and digested with the following enzymes: (2) *HindIII*; (3)*SalI*; (4) *MaeI*; (5) *EcoRI*; (6) *XhoI*; (7) *SmaI* and (8) *SacI*. 
Fig. 4.4. Southern blot of Clal-digested Bordetella chromosomal DNA hybridised with the ~620 bp fragment.

The BscI-Stul 620 bp fragment from pKK1001B. The lambda HindIII marker is indicated to the left of the blot. The arrows to the right of the blots indicate fragments of interest (see text). Lanes contained Clal-digested DNA (except where stated) prepared from the following strains: (1) S. typhimurium LT2 (digested with BscI and Stul). (2) E. coli; (3) P. magnus W1384; B. pertussis: (4) Taberman; (5) Tohama; (6) Wellcome 28; (7) L84 I; (9) Arg 40 (10) Arg41 IV; (11) L84 IV; (8) B. bronchiseptica 452; (12) B. parapertussis 5952; (13) B. avium 4148; (14) Clone p16 from E. coli (dam<sup>+</sup>); (15) Clone p16 from E. coli (dam<sup>−</sup>).(16) pIC20H containing 0.58 kb insert (digested with HindIII).
hybridisation to a single fragment of 4 kb (lane 2). The *B. pertussis* (lanes 4, 6, 7, 9-11) and *B. avium* DNA (lane 13) showed hybridisation to a ~0.96 kb fragment.

Strain Tohama appeared to produce a smaller fragment but this may have been due to overloading of the sample affecting the movement of the DNA on electrophoresis (lane 5). DNA from *B. bronchiseptica* and *B. parapertussis* strains showed hybridisation to a fragment >10 kb (lanes 8 and 12 respectively). Unfortunately DNA from *B. pertussis* strain Arg 41 was incompletely digested (lane 10). Prolonged exposure of the blot also showed hybridisation to a ~0.56 kb band in *B. pertussis* and *B. parapertussis* strains. There was also hybridisation to the 0.58 kb *ClaI* insert DNA of the p16 and pIC20H subclones containing 0.58 kb inserts and it was also slightly apparent in the vector DNA (lanes 14, 15 and 16).

Curiously, the hybridisation shown by the 620 bp fragment was very similar to, if not the same as, that of the 680 bp fragment (Fig. 4.2). Care was taken on producing the probes that the fragments were well separated on electrophoresis. Thus it is unlikely that one fragment was contaminated with the other. The hybridisation was repeated and the 620 bp probe again bound to the same fragments as the 680 bp probe (data not shown).

The similarity between the 680 bp and the 620 bp hybridisation patterns would suggest that the probes were in some way homologous.

4.8. Search for the presence of DNA homologous to DNA invertase target sequences.

If a DNA invertase were present in *Bordetella* it would act on inverted repeats. Known invertase proteins function on invertible DNA characterised by the presence of conserved inverted repeat sequences. Conserved sequences in the recombination sites of the Hin-related inversion systems are shown in Fig. 4.5. To determine the presence of related inverted repeats, various mixed sequence oligonucleotides were synthesised and used as probes against
The simplified consensus sequence was determined by comparison of the sequence surrounding the recombination sites of the Hin, Gin, Cin and Pin systems, aligned here for maximum homology (Hiestand-Nauer and Iida, 1983; Plasterk et al., 1983; Silverman and Simon, 1983). The consensus sequence used most often in this study was shorter than the simplified consensus suggested by Glasgow et al., 1989 to reduce emphasis in the area where S. typhimurium hixR varied. Bases conserved between the recombination sites are underlined. The upper case letters represent bases within the inverted repeats of each system, the lower case letters indicate the bases outside of the inverted repeats in the ON orientation. Below the well-characterised recombination sites, the sequence of one of the proposed recombination sites for pilin gene inversion in M. bovis is shown (aligned for maximum homology with hixL (Marrs et al., 1988, Marrs et al., 1985). Redrawn from Glasgow et al. (1989).
Simplified consensus sequence:

-13  -1 +1  +13

TT-TC---AAAACCAAGGTTT--GA- AA

Consensus sequence used in this study:

AAGGTTTTTGATAAAAG

G C AG A T

hixL  at t g g TTCTTGAAACCAAGGTTTTTGATAAAagca a
hixR  taaa a TTTCCTTTTGGAAGTTTTTGATAAaccaat
gixL  A C C G T T T C C T G T A A A C C G AGGTTTTTGATAAAAggatgc
gixR  A C C G T T T C C T G T A A A C C G AGGTTTTTGATAAAAggatgc
cixL  CCGAGTTCTCTTAAACCAAGGTTTTAGGATAGGTGATTAAGGATggacatg
cixR  CCGAGTTCTCTTAAACCAAGGTTTTAGGATAGGTGATTAAGGATggacatg
pixL  c t c T T C T C C C C A A C C A A C A C G t t t t a t g a a a a t g a a g
pixR  g a g c T T C T C C C A A C C A A C A C G t t t t a t g a a a a t g a a g

M. bovis  ATTGCGAGCTAGGATACCAATAATGGCGATAAACAATC
C/ûfl-digested chromosomal *Bordetella* DNA. Several probes were investigated as there were several areas of variation in the DNA bases. Three probes were originally examined by MacGregor (1990); and one which he reported to hybridise was also used in this study (probe 1, Table 4.1.). For probe 2, where there was the possibility of a base variation, a G or C base was chosen in preference to an A or T as *Bordetella* DNA has a high GC ratio. Inclusion of information from *Moraxella bovis* suggested an alternative sequence (probe 3). Probe 4 was designed from cix information (Fig. 4.5., Section 1.9.1.c.) still emphasising the G,C content and including the *M. bovis* information. By examining the consensus sequence noted in Fig. 4.5, two longer probes were designed, again still emphasising the GC content (probes 5 and 6).

Hybridisation conditions are given in Section 2.7.17.c: Probes 1-4 were hybridised and membranes washed at 37°C, whereas probes 5 and 6 were hybridised and membranes washed at 45°C. Plasmid pKK1001B DNA and *S. typhimurium* DNA was digested with *BscI* and *StuI* while the other DNA was digested with *ClaI*. Probe 1 was found to hybridise to all the fragments of pKK1001B, several fragments in *S. typhimurium* (2 fragments >4 kb, 2.9, 0.92 and ~0.6 kb), two >4kb fragments in *E. coli* and one fragment >10 kb in the *B. pertussis* DNA. With the same probe MacGregor (1990) reported hybridisation to two large molecular weight fragments in *B. pertussis* but noted differences between strains: 14.5 kb and 12.5 kb *ClaI* fragments in Taberman DNA, and 18.6 and 16.5 kb *ClaI* fragments in Tohama DNA. Probe 2 (Fig. 4.6.) hybridised to ~620 bp, ~1 kb and ~4 kb fragments in pKK1001B (lane 1), multiple fragments in *S. typhimurium* DNA (lane 2) and a >10 kb and 2.2 kb fragment in the *B. pertussis* DNA (lanes 5-8; 10-12). DNA from *B. bronchiseptica* (lane 9) and *B. parapertussis* (lane 13) strains showed faint hybridisation to the same fragments. Hybridisation to *B. avium* DNA, p16 DNA and pIC20H containing 0.58 kb insert could not be seen (lane 14). Probe 3 showed more general hybridisation but two fragments of 1.1 kb and 1.95 kb in particular were noticeable in the DNA of *B.*
Table 4.1. Mixed sequence oligonucleotides constructed from related inverted repeats.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Probe</th>
<th>Sequence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>AGGTTTAGGAAAAAG CTT T T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>GAGGTTTAGGAAAAAG CTT T T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>GAGGTTGGGGAAAACG CACT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>GAGGTTGGGGAGAG CAAC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>AAACCGAGGTTGGGGAGAG TTTGG CAA C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>TGCCCGGAAACCGAGGTTGGGGAGAG A C CT TTGG C AA C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The sequences are aligned to show areas of similarity. Where a base is shown below another, the oligonucleotide synthesised consisted of either base at that position.
Fig. 4.6. Southern blot of Clal-digested Bordetella chromosomal DNA hybridised with oligonucleotide 2 (see Table 4.1) constructed from the conserved target sequence of the Hin-related inversion systems.

The lambda HindIII marker fragments are indicated on the left of the blot. The arrows to the right of the blot indicate fragments of interest. Lanes contained Clal-digested DNA (except where indicated) prepared from the following plasmids and strains: (1) pKK1001B and (2) S. typhimurium LT2 (digested with BscI and StuI). (3) E. coli; (4) P. magnus W1384; B. pertussis: (5) Taberman C-mode; (6) Tohama; (7) Wellcome 28; (8) L84 I; (10) Arg 40; (11) Arg 41; (12) L84 IV; (9) B. bronchiseptica 452; (13) B. parapertussis 5952; (14) B. avium 4148; (15) Clone p16 from E. coli (dam<sup>+</sup>), (16) Clone p16 from E. coli (dam<sup>-</sup>). (17) pIC20H containing 0.58 kb insert (digested with HindIII).
pertussis strains. Probe 4 (Fig. 4.7.) hybridised to multiple fragments in S. typhimurium DNA and very faintly to E. coli DNA. The probe also bound to two main fragments of >10 kb and >5 kb in the DNA from B. pertussis strains in addition to seven fragments in the range 3 kb-1.6 kb and one fragment of 1.1 kb size (lanes 3-7, 9-11). DNA from B. bronchiseptica (lane 8) and B. parapertussis (lane 12) strains showed similar hybridisation though non-specific hybridisation obscured some of the fragments. No hybridisation was found to the B. avium DNA, pL1 and pIC20H containing 0.58 kb inserts apart from some non-specific hybridisation to the vector pLAFR1. The remaining two probes showed general non-specific hybridisation.

4.9. Discussion.

The hybridisation of the 680 bp probe to a ~0.58 kb fragment in B. pertussis DNA in this study confirmed the results of MacGregor (1990). However the degree of hybridisation was weak and the majority of the hybridisation was to a ~0.96 kb fragment. The absence of hybridisation to this larger fragment in MacGregor’s work could have been due to differences in the probe or Southern transfer.

Hybridisation of the 680 bp probe to Bordetella DNA indicates homology to the Hin DNA contained in the probe. However this conclusion is not substantiated since the 620 bp probe also hybridised to the same Bordetella fragments, unless the 620 bp also consisted of similar sequences of DNA. A region of 47 bp at the N-terminus of the hin gene is not included in the 680 bp fragment and thus it is possible that the 620 bp fragment is upstream of the 680 bp fragment and includes these bases of the hin gene. If this were the case, both hybridisation results would suggest homology between the Hin DNA and Bordetella DNA.

Other explanations are possible for the hybridisation of both 680 bp and 620 bp DNA fragments to the Bordetella DNA. If the 620 bp was downstream of
Fig. 4.7. Southern blot of *Cla*I-digested *Bordetella* chromosomal DNA hybridised with oligonucleotide 4 (Table 4.1.) constructed from the conserved target sequence of the Hin-related inversion systems.

The lambda *Hind*III marker fragments are indicated to the left of the blot. The arrows to the right of the blots indicate fragments of interest. Lanes contained *Cla*I-digested DNA (except where indicated) prepared from the following plasmids and strains: (1) *S. typhimurium* LT2 (digested with BscI and StuI). (2) *E. coli*; *B. pertussis*: (3) Taberman C-mode; (4) Taberman X-mode; (5) Tohama; (6) Wellcome 28; (7) L84 I; (9) Arg 40; (10) Arg 41; (11) L84 IV; (8) *B. bronchiseptica* 452; (12) *B. parapertussis* 5952; *B. avium*: (13) 4148; (14) 4480; (15) Clone p16 from *E. coli* (*dam*⁺); (16) Clone p16 from *E. coli* (*dam*⁻). (17) pIC20H containing 0.58 kb insert (digested with *Hind*III).
the *hin* gene then no Hin DNA homologous sequences would be present in the 620 bp fragment. It is, however, possible that the 680 bp fragment actually consists of two fragments of very similar size which would explain its greater intensity as compared to the 620 bp fragment on ethidium bromide stained gels. One fragment would consist of the already recognised Hin DNA region (Fig. 3.2). The other could be an adjacent sequence. The *hin* gene is followed downstream by the *H2* flagellin promoter, the inverted repeat right, and then the *H2* flagellin gene (Fig. 3.2.). The DNA sequence of H2 flagellin is known for the first 114 bp (Silverman *et al.*, 1981, Fig. 3.2.) and shows high homology to the fully sequenced *Hi* flagellin gene (Joys, 1985, Appendix A.1.1). It is therefore possible that the *BscI* site present in the H1 flagellin DNA sequence is also present in the H2 flagellin sequence. If it occurs at the same site then another *StuI-BscI* fragment would be produced of 689 bp which, on electrophoresis would run close to the 678 bp Hin DNA containing band, resulting in the ~680 bp band containing more DNA than the front-running 620 bp band. The ~680 bp band would thus consist of 526 bp of the *hin* gene and also the *H2* gene promoter, right inverted repeat and part of the *H2* structural gene, thus confusing any hybridisation results.

The calculation of the distance from the *StuI* site to the proposed *BscI* site in the H1 flagellin structural DNA, if it exists at same position as the *BscI* in the H2 flagellin structural gene, is shown by addition of the following sizes. The distance from the *StuI* site (at the 3' end of the ~680 bp fragment which encloses the Hin DNA) to the inverted repeat right including the *H2* gene promoter = 180 bp; the inverted repeat right = 14 bp; the distance to the *H2* structural gene from the inverted repeat right = 16 bp and the possible distance in the H2 flagellin DNA to the *BscI* site assuming the same location as in H1 DNA = 479 bp. The total distance, 180 + 14 + 16 + 479 = 689 bp.

The occurrence of the ~620 bp fragment can then also be explained by the presence of a *BscI* site in the H1 flagellin DNA and the fact that on inversion
of the DNA the BscI site from the Hin DNA would then be closest to the H2 flagellin DNA resulting in a BscI/BscI fragment of 617 bp. Thus the ~620 bp fragment would contain 47 bp of the hin gene, the right inverted repeat and 479 bp of the H2 flagellum DNA. Thus, BscI site to the inverted repeat right = 108 bp; inverted repeat right = 14 bp; distance to H2 flagellin DNA = 16 bp and the possible distance in H2 flagellin DNA to BscI site assuming same as H1 flagellin DNA = 479 bp. Total distance BscI to BscI = 108 + 14 + 16 + 479 = 617 bp.

Even if the site does not exist exactly as predicted, with perhaps a StuI site existing instead, the calculations show that it is possible for there to be a site which on digestion would produce fragments of ~680 bp and ~620 bp containing, the same DNA sequence, enabling the same hybridisation pattern to occur with both fragments, as has been shown. The calculations would also explain why the 680 bp fragment appeared to consist of more DNA as it could consist of not only the Hin DNA region per genome but also the H2 gene promoter, inverted repeat right and 479 bp of the H2 flagellin gene. As the 620 bp would not consist of the H2 gene promoter, any similarity of hybridisation must be due to the DNA invertase, inverted repeat and or flagellin region (N-terminus).

If the BscI/StuI site did not occur in the flagellin sequence, but upstream of the hin gene, this would still result in 620 and 680 bp fragments and they would not possess any homology with flagellin sequences. The alternative suggestion of the BscI site in the flagellin gene would enable both 680 bp and 620 bp probes to bind to the same fragment and the use of a flagellin probe should identify similar homologous fragments. These hypotheses were examined by the production of DNA fragments consisting only of the hin gene (Chapter 5) and flagellin gene sequences (Chapter 6) which were used as probes to the fixed chromosomal DNA.

Mixed oligonucleotides based on the invertase target sequence hybridised to several fragments in ClaI-digested Bordetella DNA. The GC codon usage may
have been over-emphasised, increasing the non-specific binding. Although the codon usage did reduce the variability of the bases, there were still various combinations of oligonucleotide sequences which could hybridise for each probe. Additional problems with mixed oligonucleotides of different compositions are that each of the hybrids melts at a different temperature and a high temperature may inhibit hybridisation in some cases whereas a low temperature may give non-specific hybridisation. Fewer fragments hybridised to probes which emphasised the *S. typhimurium* and *E. coli* target sequences rather than the *M. bovis* sequences, possibly showing more specificity to the former two organisms. The oligonucleotides did not hybridise to the same fragments as the 680 and 620 bp probes in *B. pertussis* DNA but rather to larger *ClaI* fragments.
CHAPTER 5

CHARACTERISATION OF A B. PERTUSSIS DNA FRAGMENT WHICH HYBRIDISED TO A HIN GENE PROBE.
5.1. Introduction.

The composition of the original Hin invertase DNA probe, 680 bp, (obtained from the digest of pKK1001B) was not fully known. The production of other invertase-specific probes was therefore investigated. The sequence of the hin DNA was known and it was therefore possible to amplify the gene directly from the plasmid pKK1001B or S. typhimurium chromosomal DNA using PCR. The amplified hin DNA, could then be used as a probe against the pKK1001B to check homology with the 620 and 680 bp fragments, but the main use of the hin DNA would be as a probe against Bordetella chromosomal DNA. This would also show if there was change in the hybridisation pattern compared to using the 680 bp and 620 bp fragment probes.

5.2. Common regions of homology in DNA invertase sequences for the construction of DNA probes.

The amino-acid sequence homologies between highly conserved regions of Hin-related recombinases are shown in Fig 5.1. The regions of homology chosen were from amino acid sequences which had the smallest variation in DNA bases when using the Bordetella codon usage (Locht and Keith, 1986; Maskell et al., 1988). The amino acid sequences were used to design two DNA oligonucleotides on opposite DNA strands to be used as probes in hybridisations to Bordetella DNA. If the hybridisation proved successful, the oligonucleotides could then be used in a PCR reaction to amplify the DNA fragment from Bordetella chromosomal DNA.

Amino-acid sequence:

5' I G Y A R V 3'

DNA sequence: Oligonucleotide 1, 17 bp.

5'-ATC GGC TAC/T GCC/G CGC GT-3'
Fig. 5.1. Comparison of the Hin-related recombinases, Min of plasmid p15B, Bin of *S. aureus* and TnpR of Tn3.

Part of the amino acid sequences of Hin (Zieg and Simon, 1980), Gin (Plasterk *et al.*, 1983), Cin (Hiestand-Nauer and Iida, 1983), Pin (Plasterk *et al.*, 1983), Min (Iida *et al.*, 1990), Bin (Rowland and Dyke, 1988) and TnpR (Heffron and McCarthy, 1979) are aligned with a gap for maximum homology; redrawn from Glasgow *et al.* (1989) with additional information on Min. The common amino-acid sequences (1 and 2) used to construct the two DNA oligonucleotides are shown in bold, the second oligonucleotide was from the inverted complementary strand. The numbers at the top of the figure represent the amino-acid numbers of Hin from the beginning of the open reading frame.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a.a.</th>
<th>MATI-GYIRV</th>
<th>--&gt;</th>
<th>LDRLGR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hin</td>
<td>VLI-GYVRV</td>
<td>--&gt;</td>
<td>LDRLGR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gin</td>
<td>MLI-GYVRV</td>
<td>--&gt;</td>
<td>LDRLGR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cin</td>
<td>MLI-GYIRV</td>
<td>--&gt;</td>
<td>LDRLGR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pin</td>
<td>MQI-GYIRV</td>
<td>--&gt;</td>
<td>LDRLGR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Min</td>
<td>LKI-GYARV</td>
<td>--&gt;</td>
<td>LDRLGR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bin</td>
<td>LKI-GYARV</td>
<td>--&gt;</td>
<td>LDRLGR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TnpR</td>
<td>MRIFGYARV</td>
<td>--&gt;</td>
<td>LDRLGR</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1) IGYARV  -->  2) LDRLGR
Amino-acid sequence:
5'  L  D  R  L  G  R  3'

DNA sequence of inverted complimentary strand: Oligonucleotide 2, 18 bp.
5'  GCG GCC CAG GCG GTC CAG 3'

Labelling of the oligonucleotides and hybridisation conditions are given in Sections 2.7.16.b and 2.7.17.c. respectively. The temperature used for hybridisation with both probes was 45°C. Oligonucleotide 1 was found to hybridise only faintly to all the ClaI-digested B. pertussis DNA preparations whereas oligonucleotide 2 showed stronger hybridisation to the chromosomal digests with a common banding pattern in B. pertussis and B. bronchiseptica although varying in B. avium (Fig. 5.2). The B. parapertussis DNA did not digest to completion so hybridisation patterns could not be compared. In the controls, hybridisation was found to pKK1001B and generally to the S. typhimurium and E. coli DNA with more predominant bands showing amongst general streaming.

The absence of hybridisation by the oligonucleotide 1 and the non-specific binding of oligonucleotide 2 suggested that these probes would not be useful in locating a homologous DNA invertase fragment. A further probe was therefore investigated.

5.3. Hin gene amplified from S. typhimurium DNA by PCR.

To produce a more specific probe, the S. typhimurium Hin invertase DNA was alone examined. The nucleotide sequence was analysed for the flanking regions of the hin gene (as shown in Fig. 3.2). The sequence was used to design two oligonucleotides in 5' to 3' orientations from complementary strands for PCR amplification of the hin gene from plasmid pKK1001B and S. typhimurium chromosomal DNA. These oligonucleotides would be more specific than those used in Section 5.2. as only the S. typhimurium sequence was used in their
Fig. 5.2. Southern blot of *Bordetella* chromosomal DNA hybridised with oligonucleotide 2 designed from regions of homology common to invertases.

The mol. wt. (kilobase) markers (Gibco-BRL) are indicated to the left of the blot. Lanes contained DNA from: (1) pKK1001B and (2) *S. typhimurium* digested with *BscI* and *StuI*; (3) *E. coli*, (4) *Peptostreptococcus magnus* W1384; *B. pertussis* strains: (5) Taberman, (6) Tohama, (7) W28, (8) L84I, (9) L84 IV, (10) Arg 40, (11) Arg 41, (12) *B. bronchiseptica* 452, (13) *B. parapertussis* 5952, (14) *B. avium* 4148 and (15) *B. avium* 4480 digested with *ClaI*. 
construction. The oligonucleotides were:

Oligo (1):
5'-TCT GAT GTA AAG GAG AAA ATC - 3'

Oligo (2):
5'-GAT TTT TAT TTT AAT TCA TTC - 3'

The PCR reaction (2.7.14.) enabled the amplification of the hin gene from both the pKK1001B and chromosomal S. typhimurium DNA. The PCR product, a 604 bp fragment in both cases, shown after electrophoresis on a 1% agarose gel (Fig. 5.3.). pKK1001B was chosen as the main source of DNA for PCR as it resulted in a higher concentration of amplified DNA.

The oligonucleotides were also used in PCR reactions under the same conditions with Bordetella chromosomal DNA. However no specific fragment was produced, only multiple fragments > 10 kb.

5.4. Digestion of pKK1001B with BscI/StuI/SacI and hybridisation with hin gene probe.

To ensure that digestion of pKK1001B DNA, described in Chapter 4, had gone to completion sequential digestions were performed in various combinations to see if the same fragments were produced. Hybridisation with the amplified hin gene probe would then show if there was homology to the hin gene in both the 620 bp and the 680 bp DNA fragment from pKK1001B. The hin probe was hybridised to Southern blotted pKK1001B DNA digested with various combinations of enzymes. The enzymes tested included BscI/ClaI and StuI, followed by digestion with SacI. There is a known SacI site within the invertase (Fig 3.2.) and also within the remaining S. typhimurium DNA in pKK1001B (Fig. 3.1).
Fig. 5.3. Electrophoresis of the PCR amplified *hin* DNA fragment from pKK1001B and *S. typhimurium* chromosomal DNA.

The kilobase (Gibco-BRL) marker is shown (m) on the left of the photograph. Lane (1) shows control DNA amplified (0.5 kb) from the GeneAmp PCR reagent kit (Perkin Elmer Cetus); (2) *hin* DNA amplified from pKK1001B and (3) *hin* DNA amplified from *S. typhimurium* chromosomal DNA.
Single digests were performed initially with Bsci, ClaI, StuI and SacI. Double digestions included digestions by Bsci then StuI, ClaI then StuI, StuI then Bsci, StuI then ClaI. Where sequential digestions required enzymes to be in different buffers, the DNA was precipitated with ethanol after the first digestion then resuspended in sterile distilled water and the second buffer added. The triple digestions covered the various combinations: Bsci, StuI and SacI; ClaI, StuI and SacI; StuI, Bsci and SacI and StuI, ClaI and SacI. No differences were seen between the products from any of these restriction digests (Fig. 5.4).

The gel (Fig. 5.4.) was Southern blotted and hybridised with radiolabelled hin gene (Section 2.7.16.a.). There were no differences between the hybridisation patterns of fragments produced by digestions in the various orders (Fig. 5.5.). Interestingly the Bsci/ClaI and StuI digestes showed hybridisation of the hin probe mainly to the 680 bp fragment but also to the larger fragment indicating that this digestion did not result in all the hin DNA being present within the 680 bp (lanes 6,7,8,9). There was also some hybridisation to the 620 bp DNA because it is also contained S. typhimurium DNA and may have also consisted of some hin DNA (see Chapter 4, Discussion). Inclusion of SacI-digestion produced hybridisation to two smaller fragments presumably originating from digestion of the 680 bp fragment, as would be expected (lanes 10,11,12,13) if the 680 bp fragment contained hin DNA which has a SacI site. Not all of the ~680 bp fragment was digested, further suggesting that the fragment does not solely consist of the hin DNA.

5.5. Hybridisation of ClaI-digested chromosomal Bordetella DNA with the hin gene probe.

The hin DNA was used as a probe against Southern-blotted ClaI-digested Bordetella chromosomal DNA (Fig. 5.6). The probe hybridised to all fragments in pKK1001B (lane 1). It also hybridised in the 620 bp to 680 bp region, to 1.85
Fig. 5.4. Digestion of pKK1001B with various combinations of \textit{BscI}, \textit{StuI} and \textit{SacI}.

The sizes of the lambda \textit{HindIII} markers (m) are indicated on the left of the gel. The arrows on the right of the gel indicate fragments of particular interest. Lanes contained pKK1001B DNA digested with the following enzymes: (1 and 2) \textit{BscI}; (3) \textit{ClaI}; (4) \textit{StuI}; (5) \textit{SacI}; (6) \textit{BscI} and \textit{StuI} (7) \textit{ClaI} and \textit{StuI}; (8) \textit{StuI} and \textit{BscI}; (9) \textit{StuI} and \textit{ClaI}; (10) \textit{BscI}, \textit{StuI}, \textit{SacI}; (11) \textit{ClaI}, \textit{StuI}, \textit{SacI} (12) \textit{Stu}, \textit{BscI}, \textit{SacI} (13) \textit{StuI}, \textit{ClaI}, \textit{SacI}.

Fig. 5.5. Southern blot of pKK1001B digested with various combinations of \textit{BscI}, \textit{StuI} and \textit{SacI} (Fig. 5.4.) and hybridised with the PCR-amplified \textit{hin} DNA probe.

The lambda \textit{HindIII} marker is indicated to the left of the blot. The arrows to the right of the blot indicate fragments of particular interest. Lanes contained plasmid DNA pKK1001B digested as shown in Fig. 5.4.
Fig. 5.6. Southern blot of *Clal*-digested *Bordetella* chromosomal DNA hybridised with PCR-amplified *hin* DNA probe.

The lambda *HindIII* markers (m) are indicated to the left of the blot. The arrows to the right of the blot indicate fragments of interest. Lanes contained DNA prepared from the following plasmids or strains digested with *Clal* (except where indicated): (1) pKK1001B and (2) *S. typhimurium* LT2 (digested with *BscI* and *StuI*). (3) *E. coli*; *B. pertussis*: (4) Taberman "C mode"; (5) Taberman; (6) Tohama; (7) Wellcome 28; (8) L84 I; (10) Arg 40; (11) Arg 41; (12) L84 IV; (9) *B. bronchiseptica* 452; (13) *B. parapertussis* 5952; *B. avium*: (14) 4148; (15) 4480; (16) Clone p16 from *E. coli* (*dam* +). (17) Clone p16 from *E. coli* (*dam* -). (18) pIC20H containing 0.58 kb insert (digested with *HindIII*).
kb and ~5 kb fragments of *S. typhimurium* (lane 2), and to a ~5 kb fragment of *E. coli* (lane 3). The hybridisation to the *B. pertussis* (lanes 4-8, 10-12) and *B. avium* DNA (14,15) was to fragments of ~1.1 kb whereas for *B. parapertussis* and *B. bronchiseptica*, the hybridisation was to a fragment >10 kb (lanes 9 and 13). There was no hybridisation to the 0.58 kb *ClaI* fragment (lanes 16, 17 and 18) originally noted as homologous to Hin invertase DNA (MacGregor, 1990).

5.6. Chromosomal DNA of *B. pertussis* Taberman (X-mode and C-mode) digested with *ClaI* or *SalI* and hybridised with i) pKK1001B 680 bp fragment and ii) the *hin* PCR-amplified gene probe.

To determine if the 680 bp and the *hin* DNA probes were hybridising to the same fragments, they were used in sequential hybridisations on the same blot. *Bordetella* chromosomal DNA was digested with *ClaI* or *SalI*, Southern blotted and then hybridised with the 680 bp probe. After exposure, the blot was stripped of hybridised DNA (Section 2.7.19.) and rehybridised with the *hin* DNA obtained by the PCR reaction. Hybridisation with the 680 bp probe showed homology to the ~0.96 kb fragment on *ClaI* digestion (Fig. 5.7.a., lanes 1 and 4) and to a ~1.6 kb fragment on *SalI* digestion (lanes 2 and 5). However, hybridisation to larger fragments were also noted in both digestions. No differences were found between the DNA of strain Taberman grown under X-mode or C-mode conditions. A further blot (data not shown) of *ClaI* and *SalI*-digested DNA of strains L84 I and L84 IV gave the same hybridisation patterns including the larger sized fragments as Taberman DNA when probed with the 680 bp probe. These larger fragments were not noted on previous blots and could be due to the probe or incomplete complete digestion of the *Bordetella* DNA.

On stripping the membrane and rehybridising with the *hin* PCR-amplified gene probe, hybridisation occurred to a ~1.1 kb *ClaI* fragment (Figure 5.7.b. lanes 1 and 4) and a ~1.1 kb fragment on *SalI* digestion (lanes 2 and 5). *BamHI*
Fig. 5.7. Southern blot of ClaI and SalI-digested Bordetella DNA hybridised with (a) 680 bp fragment (from pKK1001B digested with BscI and StuI); and (b) PCR-amplified hin DNA.

The mol. wt. (kilobase) markers (Gibco-BRL) are indicated between the blots. The arrows to the left and right of the blots indicate fragments of interest. Lanes contained Taberman DNA (C or X mode) digested with the following enzymes:

Taberman (C-mode) digested with (1) ClaI; (2) SalI; (3) BamHI
Taberman (X-mode) digested with (4) ClaI; (5) SalI; (6) BamHI
was found not to digest the DNA and so gave no more information. The two probes were therefore hybridising to different fragments, the ClaI fragments were very similar in size, but digestion with SalI enabled a distinction to be drawn between them.

The hin probe was apparently hybridising to a ~1.1 kb fragment of ClaI-digested B. pertussis DNA. Ethidium bromide staining of agarose gels containing ClaI-digested B. pertussis DNA shows the appearance of a repeat region which stands out as an intensely staining band (not shown). Analysis of the sequence of a tandem repeat in the B. pertussis genome (Glare et al., 1990, Appendix A.1.2.) has shown the presence of a ClaI and a SalI site so that digestion with ClaI or SalI results in multiple copies of 1.046 kb fragments. The hin DNA may thus have homology to this repeat sequence. Hybridisation may also have been due to the fact that the tandem repeat sequence was at a higher concentration and a GC-rich area might enable preferential hybridisation to occur. The sequences of the hin probe and the B. pertussis tandem repeat were therefore examined for any homology.

5.7. Sequence comparison of hin gene and B. pertussis tandem repeat. The region of homology, 17 bp, used to design a probe for hybridisation to Bordetella chromosomal DNA.

The tandem repeat sequence and the PCR amplified hin DNA sequence were compared (using DNASTAR) to determine the extent of homology. The tandem repeat sequence of Glare et al. (1990) was adapted from the homologous insertion sequence reported by McLafferty et al. (1988) which was available on the computer database and differed only by a few bases. The hin DNA sequence and the tandem repeat sequence were compared using the programme Align, and the largest regions of homology were also apparent using the Dotplot programme. This most homologous sequence occurred as 15 bp within a 17 bp sequence (Fig. 5.8, No1). The Dotplot also showed another equivalent area of
Fig. 5.8. DNA sequence comparison of *B. pertussis* tandem repeat and PCR amplified *hin* DNA.

The tandem repeat sequence (Glare *et al.*, 1990) and the *hin* DNA sequence (Silverman *et al.*, 1981) were compared using the programme Align. The most homologous sequences were N^O_1 and N^O_2. Both regions represent 75% identity over 20 bases. The underlined bases represent homologous bases between the two sequences.
N° 1.


N° 2.

homology (Fig. 5.8, N°2). These regions represent 75% homology over 20 bases. The regions appeared to be GC-rich, although the hin DNA from S. typhimurium generally should not be as G-C rich as the Bordetella DNA to which it was hybridising. The sequence of the S. typhimurium hin DNA was altered to the GC codon usage of Bordetella and again compared to the repeat sequence by Dotplot analysis. The number of homologous regions was increased to fifteen with 75% identity and three with 80% identity over 20 bases. One of these latter sequences was the same as before increasing the G-C codon usage i.e. (Fig. 5.8. N°1). This region is G-C rich and perhaps is an area showing the particular homology to bind the probe. It is possible that the hybridisation of the hin probe could be due to this small GC-rich region in both DNA sequences allowing hybridisation at low stringency. Although the hin DNA is ~600 bp, it was labelled by the Multiprime system which would allow the labelling of smaller fragments such as the 17 bp fragment. A 17 bp oligonucleotide was designed from the homologous tandem repeat sequence (Fig 5.8. N°1):

\[ 5' \text{CTG GCC GAC CTG GAG CG}^+ \text{CTG GAG CG} 3' \]

This was used as a probe to a Southern blot of Clal-digested Bordetella DNA (Fig. 5.9). It hybridised strongly to the tandem repeat area of B. pertussis DNA (1.1 kb) and also presumably to repeats elsewhere in the chromosome to give a streaming effect. Hybridisation to B. bronchiseptica and B. parapertussis was found only in the higher mol. wt. region (lanes 9 and 13). No hybridisation was seen to the B. avium DNA (lanes 14 and 15) possibly due to insufficient DNA. The probe also hybridised in the area of the ~620 bp to ~680 bp region and generally within the S. typhimurium chromosomal DNA.

After stripping the blot and rehybridising with the hin DNA, hybridisation was found to occur to the same areas in the B. pertussis DNA but there was also strong hybridisation to the pKK1001B and S. typhimurium DNA. The use of an oligonucleotide exactly as found in the hin 17 bp and not that of the repeat as was used here could have been more useful. However, hybridisation with the
Fig. 5.9. Southern blot of Clal-digested *Bordetella* chromosomal DNA hybridised with 17 bp probe derived from the *B. pertussis* tandem repeat sequence.

The lambda HindIII markers are indicated to the left of the blot. The arrows to the right of the blot indicate fragments of interest. Lanes contained DNA prepared from the following plasmids or strains digested with Clal (except where indicated): (1) pKK1001B and (2) *S. typhimurium* LT2 (digested with Bsc1 and Stu1). (3) *E. coli*; (4) *Peptostreptococcus magnus* W1384; 
*B. pertussis*: (5) Taberman; (6) Tohama; (7) Wellcome 28; (8) L84 I; (10) Arg 40; (11) Arg 41; (12) L84 IV; (9) *B. bronchiseptica* 452; (13) *B. parapertussis* 5952; (14) *B. avium* 4148; (15) 4480; (16) Clone p16 from *E. coli* (*dam*⁺); (17) Clone p16 from *E. coli* (*dam*⁻). 
(18) pIC20H containing 0.58 kb insert (digested with HindIII).
whole hin DNA probe to the same blot produced hybridisation in the same place, aiding interpretation as to the similarity in hybridisation between the hin and tandem repeat probes.

5.8. Discussion.

The hybridisation of the hin DNA to B. pertussis Clal-digested chromosomal DNA (1.1. kb) was similar to the hybridisation using the 680 bp fragment ( ~ 0.96 kb) but was not as strong. The slight difference between the sizes of the fragments to which the two probes hybridised suggested that the two probes were binding to different fragments. This was confirmed by digestion of the Bordetella DNA with a different enzyme, SalI. The 680 bp fragment probe appeared to consist of other DNA fragment(s) in addition to the invertase DNA which enabled strong hybridisation to a different Bordetella fragment.

The hin DNA hybridised to fragments in B. pertussis DNA recognised as tandem repeats. Sequence comparison of hin and the tandem repeat DNA showed small areas of strong homology. One of these areas, a 17 bp sequence, was chosen to show that this could have sufficient homology to allow hybridisation to occur. Interestingly, the hin DNA probe was shown to hybridise to the other Bordetella species. The B. avium strain showed homology with the same sized Clal fragment as in B. pertussis (Section 5.5), but this repeat does not occur in B. avium strains. It is possible that multiple copies are not necessary for hybridisation. The hybridisation in B. bronchiseptica and B. parapertussis strains was to Clal fragments of > 10 kb. The sequence of the B. pertussis 1.05 kb tandem repeat has been identified as a transposon-like insertion element, IS481 (McLafferty et al., 1988). This tandem repeat has not been noted in the other Bordetella species. It is possible that the homology shown here in these strains is due to the presence of a single insertion sequence (IS). The location of ISs is also interesting as ISs have been shown to occur close to B. pertussis virulence genes. One is located upstream of the adenylate cyclase locus and another is
located immediately adjacent to the C-terminal end of the agglutinogen 2 fimbrial subunit gene (McPheat et al., 1989b) and one close to the porin gene (Li et al., 1991b).

These results suggested that the hin DNA probe was not hybridising to a homologous DNA invertase sequence in *B. pertussis* but rather to an insertion sequence, tandemly repeated. The absence of tandem repeats in the other species suggests that it is not necessary for the insertion sequence to be in multiple copies to enable hybridisation. However, this would suggest the presence of insertion sequences within the other *Bordetella*. Single copy bands have been shown in DNA from *B. bronchiseptica* (McPheat and McNally, 1987a; Glare et al., 1990) and *B. parapertussis* (McPheat and McNally 1987a) when hybridised with IS homologous probes. Insertion sequences have also been found in *B. parapertussis, B. bronchiseptica* by Zee et al. (1993) and *B. avium* by Savelkoul et al. (1993). If the homology in this study does represent the presence of insertion sequences in the other bordetellae it would be interesting to discover which genes they are close to on the chromosome.

The hybridisation of the 620 bp and 680 bp *S. typhimurium* fragments of pKK1001B to *Bordetella* DNA as had been suggested in Section 4.9. Discussion might also be due to flagellin gene homology. This was examined in Chapter 6.
CHAPTER 6

ANALYSIS OF BORDETELLA DNA
FOR HOMOLOGY TO FLAGELLIN GENE SEQUENCES.
6.1. Introduction.

Within the four species of *Bordetella*, two are non-motile: the human pathogens *B. pertussis* and *B. parapertussis*; and two are motile: the broad host-range mammalian pathogen *B. bronchiseptica*, and the avian pathogen *B. avium*. The motility of the latter two species is due to peritrichous flagella (Pittman, 1984a; Kersters et al., 1984). In Chapters 4 and 5, hybridisation was seen between *Bordetella* DNA and restriction digest fragments of the plasmid pKK1001B that could have contained *S. typhimurium* H2 flagellin DNA sequences. A DNA probe consisting of only flagellin gene sequences was used in a hybridisation to Southern-blotted chromosomal *Bordetella* DNA to see if there was homology to the *S. typhimurium* flagellin.

The complete *H*1 flagellin gene has been sequenced (~ 1.47 kb; Joys, 1985, Appendix A.1.1.) but only 114 bp of the *H*2 flagellin gene sequence has been published (Silverman et al., 1981). A restriction enzyme map of the gene could yield a *H*1 flagellin DNA probe. Fig. 6.1. shows the alignment of the first 114 bp of the two DNA sequences of *H*1 and *H*2 flagellin genes indicating their close similarity. Thus a probe consisting of the *H*1 gene could conceivably detect *H*2 DNA sequences and any homologous *Bordetella* DNA sequences by hybridisation. The *H*1 gene could be prepared by amplifying the DNA from *S. typhimurium* chromosomal DNA using PCR. An oligonucleotide probe could also be designed from the conserved N-terminal amino acid sequences of various flagellin proteins; e.g. *S. typhimurium*, *E. coli* and *B. bronchiseptica* (Akerley et al., 1992).

6.2. Examination of partially-sequenced *S. typhimurium* H2 flagellin DNA for restriction sites.

Examination of the 114 bp sequence of H2 flagellin DNA (Silverman et al., 1981) shows the first restriction site to occur at the 5' end is *Bbv*I. Analysis of restriction sites downstream of the *Bbv*I site in H2 flagellin DNA (Zieg et al.,
Fig. 6.1. Alignment of H1 and H2 flagellin DNA sequences.

H1 flagellin DNA sequence, bases 13 to 1485 (1473 bp) (Joys, 1985) aligned with H2 flagellin DNA sequence, bases 1036 to 1149 (114 bp) (Silverman et al., 1981).
(H1): ATGGCACAAGCATAATACAAACACGCTGCTGTTGACCCAGAATAACCTGAACAAA
ATGGCACAAGT AT AA AC AACAG CTGTGCTG TGGACCCAGAATAACCTGAACAAA

(H2): ATGGCACAAGTAAATCAACACTAACAAGTCTGCTGCTGCTGACCCAGAATAACCTGAACAAA

1040^  1050^  1060^  1070^  1080^  1090^  

(H1): TCCCAGTCGGCTCTGGCACCGCTACGGGTATCGAGCGTCTGTCTTCCGGTCTGCGTATCAACAGC
TCCCAGTCGGCTCTGGCACCGCTACGGGTATCGAGCGTCTGTCTTCCGGTCTGCGTATCAACAGC

(H2): TCCCAGTCGGCAGTGGCACCGCTACGGGTATCGAGCGTCTGTCTTCCGGTCTGCGTATCAACAGC

1100^  1110^  1120^  1130^  1140^
1978) shows an EcoRI site ~1.1 kb away. A BbvI/EcoRI digest should thus cover the majority of the H2 flagellin gene. However, as the majority of the sequence between the sites was not known, other BbvI sites may be present which would have affected the result. The plasmid pKK1001B was digested with BbvI in a single digest, and in a double digest with EcoRI. Both digests gave multiple fragments showing that there were multiple BbvI sites and the desired single fragment could not be obtained.

As part of the sequence was known, it would have been possible to amplify the 114 bp of the H2 flagellin gene from the pKK1001B by PCR. However, the known sequence was only the N-terminal, a tenth of the whole gene. As an alternative, the HI flagellin gene was amplified from S. typhimurium DNA as the whole of its sequence was known.

6.3. Design of flagellin probes.

Two types of flagellin probe were prepared for hybridisation to Bordetella chromosomal DNA in Southern blots.

Probe 1. From the HI gene sequence (Joys, 1985, Appendix A.1.1.) two oligonucleotides were derived for use in the PCR reaction to amplify the entire HI flagellin structural gene (1.47 kb) from S. typhimurium chromosomal DNA.

A. 5' - ATG GCA CAA GTC ATT AAT ACA - 3' and
B. 5' - TTA ACG CAG TAA AG A GAG G AC - 3'.

PCR reactions were as in Section 2.7.14. The PCR product was checked by electrophoresis on a low melting point 1% agarose gel (Fig. 6.2.), the HI flagellin DNA fragment cut from the gel and the DNA radiolabelled in the agarose (Section 2.7.16.a).

Probe 2. A 15 bp oligonucleotide was designed from the conserved N-terminal amino acid sequences of various flagellin proteins, those of S. typhimurium, E. coli and B. bronchiseptica (Akerley et al., 1992). The Bordetella
Fig. 6.2. Electrophoresis of the PCR-amplified *H1* flagellin gene from *S. typhimurium* chromosomal DNA.

The sizes of the mol. wt. (kilobase, Gibco-BRL) marker (m) is shown to the right of the gel. The arrow to the left marks the amplified *H1* flagellin gene. Lanes contained (1) no amplification of *H1* flagellin gene from pKK1001B, (2,3,4) amplification of *H1* flagellin gene from *S. typhimurium* chromosomal DNA (2) 200 ng, (3) 400 ng and (4) 800 ng initially present in PCR reaction.
1.473 kb
codon usage noted by Locht and Keith (1986) and Maskell et al. (1988) was used to derive the DNA sequence from the amino acid (aa) sequence.

aa sequence : Val Ile Asn Thr Asn

DNA sequence: 5′- GTC/G ATC AAC ACC AAC- 3′

The oligonucleotide was synthesised and radiolabelled as in Sections 2.7.15. and 2.7.16.b.

6.4. Hybridisation of ClaI-digested Bordetella DNA with S. typhimurium H1 flagellin gene probe.

Membranes of Southern-blotted chromosomal DNA were initially hybridised with DNA probe 1 after which the probe was removed from the membrane (Section 2.8.19.) and the membrane was then re-hybridised with probe 2. Hybridisation conditions for probe 1 and probe 2 are given in Sections 2.7.17.a. and 2.7.17.c. respectively.

Southern blots of ClaI-digested chromosomal DNA from bordetellae showed some variation in the pattern of hybridisation between the four species when hybridised with the S. typhimurium H1 flagellin gene probe. The probe hybridised to a fragment (>10 kb) which was common to all strains of B. parapertussis and B. bronchiseptica (Fig. 6.3. lanes 10, 23-31) but was absent in B. pertussis (lanes 4-9, 11-16, 20-22) and B. avium strains (lanes 32-33). B. parapertussis strain 10520 (lane 24) varied in also having a fragment >13 kb. B. parapertussis and B. bronchiseptica also appeared to share a 2.8 kb fragment with all strains of B. pertussis tested. A ~0.96 kb fragment which hybridised in all strains of B. pertussis and B. avium tested, was absent in the B. parapertussis and B. bronchiseptica digests. The probe hybridised to all fragments in the digest of pKK1001B (lanes 1 and 17) and to four fragments (0.65, 1.85, 3.6, and ~6.1kb:  

114
Fig. 6.3. Southern blot of *Cla*I-digested *Bordetella* chromosomal DNA hybridised with the PCR-amplified *H1* flagellin gene of *S. typhimurium*.

The mol. wt. (kilobase) markers (Gibco-BRL) are indicated between the blots. The arrows to the right of the blots indicate fragments of particular interest. Lanes contained DNA prepared from the following plasmids or strains digested with *Cla*I (except where stated): (1 and 17) pKK1001B and (2 and 18) *S. typhimurium* LT2 (digested with *Bsc*I and *Stu*I). (3 and 19) *Peptostreptococcus magnus* W1384; *B. pertussis*: (4) Taberman; (5) Taberman "C mode"; (6) Tohama; (7) Wellcome 28; (8) Arg 40; (9) Arg 41; (11) L84 I; (12) L84 IV; (13) 134 I; (14) 134 IV; (15) D 30042 I; (16) D 30042 IV; (20) 11615 IV; (21) M2 I; (22) M2 I; *B. parapertussis* (23) 5952; (24) 10520; *B. bronchiseptica*: (10 and 25) 452; (26) A51 I; (27) A51 III; (28) 276 I; (29) 276 III; (30) FW5 I; (31) FW5 III. *B. avium*: (32) 4148; (33) 4480.
lanes 2 and 18) of DNA from *S. typhimurium* (Gram-negative, flagellate) but there was no hybridisation to DNA from *P. magnus* (Gram-positive, non-flagellate: lanes 3 and 19).

6.5. Hybridisation of ClaI-digested DNA with flagellin oligonucleotide probe.

The membranes used in Fig. 6.3. were stripped of the HI flagellin gene probe and reprobed with the 15 bp oligonucleotide (probe 2; Fig. 6.4). This hybridised to several fragments >4kb in *B. pertussis*, *B. parapertussis* and *B. bronchiseptica*. The 2.8 kb fragment which appeared common to these strains with the HI flagellin gene probe was also apparent with the oligonucleotide probe. The *B. pertussis* strains could be distinguished from the *B. parapertussis* and the *B. bronchiseptica* strains by the presence of a 3.7 kb DNA fragment in *B. pertussis* strains, and a 3.2 kb fragment in the *B. parapertussis* and *B. bronchiseptica* strains. Homology to a ~0.96 kb fragment was again apparent in *B. avium*, but was not readily visible in other strains and was somewhat obscured by stronger hybridisation to a 1.1 kb fragment in most strains except *B. avium*. In the tracks containing the control DNA, the level of hybridisation to pKK1001B was greatly reduced, *S. typhimurium* showed four DNA fragments (0.68, 1.75, 1.95, ~5.2kb) that hybridised to the probe, but again there was no hybridisation to DNA from the non-flagellate *P. magnus*.

6.6. Hybridisation of SalI-digested Bordetella DNA with *S. typhimurium* HI flagellin gene probe.

Southern blots of SalI-digested chromosomal DNA from bordetellae, when hybridised with the *S. typhimurium HI* flagellin gene, showed increased distinction in the pattern of variation between the four species (Fig. 6.5), although homology between the majority of strains of each species was noted, as with the ClaI preparation.

The probe hybridised to one fragment (~5.6 kb) in *B. bronchiseptica*
Fig. 6.4. Southern blot from Fig. 6.3. stripped of the probe and rehybridised with the radiolabelled 15 bp oligonucleotide derived from the conserved N-terminal flagellin sequences.

The mol. wt. (kilobase) markers (Gibco-BRL) are indicated between the blots. The arrows to the right of the blots indicate fragments of particular interest. Lanes contained DNA prepared from the following plasmids or strains digested with Clal (except where stated): (1 and 17) pKK1001B and (2 and 18) S. typhimurium LT2 digested with (Bsc1 and Stu1). (3 and 19) Peptostreptococcus magnus W1384;

B. pertussis: (4) Taberman; (5) Taberman "C mode"; (6) Tohama; (7) Wellcome 28; (8) Arg 40; (9) Arg 41; (11) L84 I; (12) L84 IV; (13) 134 I; (14) 134 IV; (15) D 30042 I; (16) D 30042 IV; (20) 11615 IV; (21) M2 I; (22) M2 I; B. parapertussis (23) 5952; (24) 10520; B. bronchiseptica: (10 and 25) 452; (26) A51 I; (27) A51 III; (28) 276 I; (29) 276 III; (30) FW5 I ; (31) FW5 III. B. avium : (32) 4148; (33) 4480.
Fig. 6.5. Southern blot of SalI-digested *Bordetella* chromosomal DNA hybridised with the PCR-amplified *H*1 flagellin gene of *S. typhimurium*.

The mol. wt. (kilobase) markers (Gibco-BRL) are indicated between the blots. The arrows to the left and right of the blots indicate fragments of particular interest. Lanes contained DNA prepared from the following plasmids or strains all digested with SalI (except where stated): (1 and 18) *H*1 flagellin gene amplified by PCR; (2 and 19) pKK1001B and (3 and 20) *S. typhimurium* LT2 (digested with BscI and StuI). (4 and 21) *E. coli*; (5 and 23) *Bacillus stearothermophilus*; (6 and 24) *Clostridium acetobutylicum*; (7 and 22) *Peptostreptococcus magnus* W1384; *B. pertussis*: (8) Taberman; (9) Taberman "C-mode"; (10) Tohama; (11) Wellcome 28; (12) Arg 40; (13) Arg 41; (14) L84 I; (15) L84 IV; (16) D 30042 I; (17) D 30042 IV; *B. parapertussis*: (25) 5952; (26) 10520; *B. bronchiseptica*: (27) 452; (28) A51 I; (29) A51 III; (30) 276 I; (31) 276 III; (32) FW5 I; (33) FW5 III; (34) *B. avium* 4148.
strains (lanes 28-33) except for strain *B. bronchiseptica* 452 (lane 27) where the one fragment was \( \sim 4.7 \) kb though this may be due to variation in the depth of the gel affecting the electrophoresis of the samples in this area. The two *B. parapertussis* strains 5952 and 10520 (lanes 25 and 26) also showed similar sized fragments of \( \sim 4.9 \) kb. *B. parapertussis* 10520 was again seen to differ from the strain 5952 by having two fragments, the additional one of 4.3 kb (lane 26). Differences between the two strains had also been noted previously on *ClaI* digestion of the *B. parapertussis* DNA (Fig. 6.3, lanes 23 and 24). There was no common fragment in the *B. pertussis* strains. A fragment common to *B. bronchiseptica*, *B. parapertussis* and *B. pertussis* was noted after *ClaI* digestion.

The *H1* flagellin gene probe hybridised to a \( \sim 1.65 \) kb *Sall* fragment in all strains of *B. pertussis* (Fig. 6.5, lanes 8-16), except (lane 17) where D30042 IV did not digest with *ClaI*. Taberman DNA prepared from the strain originally grown under C-mode conditions appears to have an extra fragment of 2.1 kb (lane 9) and Tohama DNA has extra fragments of 2.1, 2.8 and 3.7 kb but this variation may have been caused by the DNA not being completely digested (lane 10). The *B. avium* fragment is \( \sim 2.2 \) kb (lane 34) varying with the *B. pertussis* fragment size in contrast to the fragment size similarity which had been noted in the *ClaI* digestion of these species (Fig. 6.3).

The probe again hybridised to all *BscI/StuI* fragments in the digest of pKK1001B and to four fragments in *S. typhimurium* DNA as noted with the other blots. This blot shows the hybridisation to a *Sall* fragment >12 kb in *E. coli* DNA (Gram-negative, flagellate) but no hybridisation was detected to DNA from *Bacillus stearothermophilus* (Gram-positive, flagellate) or to DNA from *Clostridium acetobutylicum* (Gram-positive, flagellate) or to DNA from *Klebsiella aerogenes* (data not shown) (Gram-negative, non flagellate).

116
6.7. Discussion.

The pKK1001B 680 bp fragment hybridised to the same sized ClaI and SalI fragments of *B. pertussis* DNA as did the *H1* flagellin gene probe. Therefore, the hybridisation noted with the 680 bp probe in Chapter 4 could possibly have been due to flagellin gene sequences. Although the original impetus for the flagellin work was to corroborate this idea, the work has provided other useful information on homology to flagellin gene sequences in all species of *Bordetella*.

The flagellin DNA probes, both the whole *S. typhimurium* *H1* flagellin gene and the 15 bp oligonucleotide derived from the conserved N-terminal sequences of various flagellins, showed homology to DNA from all four species of *Bordetella* despite only two of them being motile. This indicates the presence of non-expressed flagellin genes in the two non-motile species (*B. pertussis* and *B. parapertussis*). Other workers, in a recent report (Akerley et al., 1992) mentioned that *B. pertussis* chromosomal DNA contained sequences which hybridised to degenerate oligonucleotide probes based on the *B. bronchiseptica* flagellin amino acid sequences. This work supports that observation and extends the investigation to non-motile *B. parapertussis* strains and motile *B. avium* strains which also possess homology with the *S. typhimurium* flagellin gene sequences.

In the ClaI digests, those fragments shown to have homology to the *H1* DNA probe also appeared to hybridise to the oligonucleotide probe although the hybridisation of the oligonucleotide to the 0.96 kb fragment was not apparent except with *B. avium*. The probe consisting of the whole *S. typhimurium* *H1* flagellin gene hybridised to fewer *Bordetella* chromosomal DNA fragments than did the oligonucleotide probe designed from the conserved flagellin N-terminus. With the *S. typhimurium* chromosomal DNA, three hybridising fragments were of similar size with both probes although a band in each was different. These results can be explained in part by the smaller size of the
N-terminal oligonucleotide and the emphasis on the high GC codon usage of bordetellae. This would lead to the increased possibility of non-specific hybridisation to *Bordetella* sequences not related to the flagellin sequence, whereas the lower GC of the *S. typhimurium* DNA would result in the *H1* probe binding more strongly than the oligonucleotide to the flagellin structural genes. It has been shown that two classes of flagellins are produced by *B. bronchiseptica* strains although only one type is expressed by any one strain (Akerley et al., 1992). It is possible that the extra bands in the *Bordetella* strains which hybridise to the probe might signify the presence of more than one flagellin structural gene. There were no differences detected in the hybridisation patterns of *B. pertussis* strains, irrespective of phase, antigenic mode, serotype or origin. The *B. bronchiseptica* blots were also the same irrespective of the phase or origin of the strains. *B. parapertussis* showed slight variation between the two strains, but this might have been due to methylation of one strain or incomplete digestion of chromosomal DNA. For *B. avium*, again no variation was detected between the strains.

The presence of non-expressed genes has been shown previously in the *Bordetella* genus. *B. bronchiseptica* and *B. parapertussis* possess the *ptx* locus but pertussis toxin is not expressed in these species (Arico and Rappuoli, 1987; Nicosia and Rappuoli, 1987). *B. avium* does not contain sequences related to the *ptx* or *cya* genes yet is flagellate whereas *B. parapertussis* and *B. pertussis* are not, suggesting a possible evolutionary tree (Arico and Rappuoli, 1987; Brownlie et al., 1988). These results thus provide a starting point for work where *Bordetella* flagellin and surrounding sequences can be compared. Loss of activity may be at the transcriptional level and examination of promoter sequences would be useful to determine if changes there have altered expression of the flagellin genes. If the mutation in the flagellin gene of *B. pertussis* and *B. parapertussis* are similar, this would indicate that loss of flagellin expression occurred before they diverged.
CHAPTER 7

DETERMINATION OF THE METHYLATION STATE OF *BORDETELLA* DNA.
7.1. Introduction.

Methylation has been shown to be involved in phase variation for example in the control of gene expression in *E. coli* pyelonephritis-associated pili (Blyn *et al.*, 1990). It would be useful to determine if methylation is involved in the expression of *Bordetella* virulence factors or even flagellin. Two commonly examined methylation states are Dam and Dcm methylation. The Dam methylase of *E. coli* methylates at the N6 position of adenine in the sequence 5'-GATC-3' by transferring a methyl group from S-adenosylmethionine (Hattman *et al.*, 1978). The Dcm methylase adds methyl groups to the C5 position of the internal cytosines in the sequences 5'-CCAGG-3' and 5'-CCTGG-3' (May and Hattman, 1975, Table 7.1).

The following restriction enzymes will not cleave DNA that has been Dam or Dcm methylated. Dam: *MboI*; Dcm: *EcoRII*. Isoschizomers of these particular enzymes Dam: *Sau3A*; Dcm: *BstNI* are able to cleave DNA irrespective of Dam or Dcm methylation respectively (Table 7.1, noted by *). The enzyme *DpnI* cleaves only Dam-methylated DNA. Several restriction endonuclease isochizomers differ in their sensitivity to methylation when other sites than Dam or Dcm are modified. Isoschizomer pairs and modified recognition sites at which they differ are shown in Table 7.1.

The methylation state of *Bordetella* phase variants was first examined by Goldman *et al*. (1987). This work suggested that phase I and X-mode *B. pertussis* strains were modified, possibly due to methylation, resulting in the resistance of their DNA to certain restriction enzymes. One enzyme *MspI* did not digest the DNA of phase I strains whereas it did digest that of phase IV strains. However MacGregor (1990) found no digestion of the DNA of either *B. pertussis* phase variant with *MspI*, but digestion of both with *HpaII*, its isoschizomer. The lack of digestion with *MspI* could be due to methylation at the site CCGG. MacGregor (1990) observed that, on *MboI* digestion, several fragments of approximately 1.5-3 kb were missing from the avirulent strains. In the work reported here,
Table 7.1. Isochizomers and difference in sensitivity to methylated DNA at particular modified sites.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methylated sequence</th>
<th>Digested by</th>
<th>Not digested by</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G^{m6}ATC</td>
<td>Sau3A(^*)</td>
<td>MboI(^*)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GAT(^{m5})C</td>
<td>MboI</td>
<td>Sau3A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GAT(^{m4})C</td>
<td>MboI</td>
<td>Sau3A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(^{m4})CGGG</td>
<td>MspI</td>
<td>HpaII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C(^{m5})CGG</td>
<td>MspI</td>
<td>HpaII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C(^{m4})CGG</td>
<td>MspI</td>
<td>HpaII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(^{m5})CGGG</td>
<td></td>
<td>MspI/HpaII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hm5C(^{m5})CGG</td>
<td></td>
<td>MspI/HpaII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C(^{m5})CA/TGG</td>
<td>BstNI(^*)</td>
<td>EcoRII(^*)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hm5C(^{m5})CA/TGG</td>
<td></td>
<td>BstNI/EcoRII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(^{m5})CCA/TGG</td>
<td>BstNI/EcoRII</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(^{m5})C(^{m5})CA/TGG</td>
<td>BstNI</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C(^{m4})CA/TGG</td>
<td></td>
<td>EcoRII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m^{4}CCA/TGG</td>
<td></td>
<td>EcoRII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CC^{m6}AGG</td>
<td></td>
<td>EcoRII</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^{m4}\)C = N4-methylcytosine; \(^{m5}\)C = C5-methylcytosine
hm5C = hydroxymethylcytosine; \(^{m6}\)A = N6-methyladenine
A/T = A or T base present
restriction digests with enzymes sensitive to methylated DNA were repeated and extended by examination of DNA from a number of strains of the four species of *Bordetella*.

7.2. Examination of *Bordetella* DNA for methylation.

The DNA from strains of all four *Bordetella* species was digested by the enzymes *Sau3A, MboI, DpnI; MspI, HpaII; BstNI* and *EcoRII* to examine the methylation state of the DNA. All strains were grown under X mode conditions, except for *B. pertussis* strain Taberman which was also grown under C mode conditions. Both *Sau3A* (Fig. 7.1, A) and *MboI* (Fig. 7.1, B) digested the *Bordetella* DNA equally well whereas the enzyme *DpnI* (Fig. 7.1, C) was not found to digest any of the *Bordetella* DNA, showing the absence of Dam methylation. No fragments were found to be missing contrary to the report of MacGregor (1990).

*Bordetella* DNA from all four species was fully digested by the enzymes *MspI* (Fig. 7.2, A) and *HpaII* (Fig. 7.2, B) with two exceptions. One exception was C-mode *B. pertussis* strain Taberman DNA which showed a high molecular weight single band (Fig. 7.2, lane 5) with *MspI* digestion but not *HpaII* digestion and which is not present in X-mode Taberman DNA with *MspI* digestion (Fig. 7.2, lane 4). The other exception was *B. parapertussis* 10520 (Fig. 7.2, A, lane 25) which was not completely digested with *MspI*. Both cases could be showing some methylation at CCGG sites. In contrast to the results of MacGregor (1990), the majority of the *Bordetella* DNA was digested with *MspI* and unlike the report of Goldman et al. (1987), C-mode DNA as opposed to the X-mode DNA was showing some methylation sensitivity and no differences were found between *B. pertussis* phase I or phase IV DNA. The discrepancy in the *MspI* results on *B. pertussis* DNA does not appear to be due to any variation in the growth of the original strains as they were grown under the same conditions in both studies. Known methylated sites which inhibit *MspI* digestion also inhibit *HpaII*
Fig. 7.1. *Sau3A, MboI* and *DpnI*-digested *Bordetella* chromosomal DNA.

The mol. wt. markers are noted by $m^1 =$ kilobase marker, and $m^2 =$ lambda *HindIII*. Lanes contained DNA prepared from the following strains and digested with (Fig. A) *Sau3A*; (Fig. B) *MboI* and (Fig. C) *DpnI* (except where stated):

(1 and 18) lambda DNA (undigested); (2 and 19) lambda DNA;

*B. pertussis*: (lanes 3, 20) Taberman (undigested); (4, 21) Taberman; (5) Taberman "C-mode"; (6) Tohama; (7) Wellcome 28; (8) Arg 40; (9) Arg 41; (10) L84 I; (11) L84 IV; (12) 134 I; (13) 134 IV; (14) D 30042 I; (15) D 30042 IV; (16) 364 IV; (17) 11615 IV; (22) M2 I; (23) M2 I; *B. parapertussis*: (24) 5952; (25) 10520; *B. bronchiseptica*: (26) 452; (27) A51 I; (28) A51 III; (29) 276 I; (30) 276 III; (31) FW5 I; (32) FW5 III; *B. avium*: (33) 4148; (34) 4480.
Fig. 7.2. MspI and HpaII-digested Bordetella chromosomal DNA.

The mol. wt. markers are noted by m\(^1\) = kilobase marker, and m\(^2\) = lambda HindIII. Lanes contained DNA prepared from the following strains digested with (Fig. A) MspI and (Fig. B) HpaII (except where indicated): (1 and 18) lambda DNA (undigested); (2 and 19) lambda DNA; B. pertussis: (3, 20) Taberman (undigested); (4, 21) Taberman; (5) Taberman "C-mode"; (6) Tohama; (7) Wellcome 28; (8) Arg 40; (9) Arg 41; (10) L84 I; (11) L84 IV; (12) 134 I; (13) 134 IV; (14) D 30042 I; (15) D 30042 IV; (16) 364 IV; (17) 11615 IV; (22) M2 I; (23) M2 II; B. parapertussis: (24) 5952; (25) 10520; B. bronchiseptica: (26) 452; (27) A51 I; (28) A51 III; (29) 276 I; (30) 276 III; (31) FW5 I; (32) FW5 III; B. avium: (33) 4148; (34) 4480.
digestion, but there was no inhibition of HpaII in any of the results. Thus if there is any methylation at a CCGG site, the exact position is not known.

Digestion with EcoRII (Fig. 7.3) and BstNI (Fig. 7.4) showed interesting results. Most of the DNA samples were digested by both EcoRII and BstNI, but neither enzyme digested Taberman DNA when prepared after growth of the strain in C-mode conditions (Fig. 7.3 lane 5, Fig. 7.4. lane 5). The DNA of *B. parapertussis* strain 10520 was not digested to completion by either enzyme (Fig. 7.3 lane 23, Fig. 7.4 lane 24). The DNA of two of the *B. pertussis* strains 134 IV and 364 IV was not found to be digested by EcoRII (Fig. 7.3. lane 13 and 16) but was digested by BstNI (Fig. 7.4. lane 13 and 16). The DNA of *B. pertussis* strain D30042 IV was not fully digested with BstNI (Fig. 7.4. lane 15).

### 7.3. Discussion.

An absence of extensive Dam methylation was shown by MboI and BscI cleaving the *Bordetella* chromosomal DNA. If the BscI recognition sequence (5'-AT'CGAT-3') were preceded by a 5' guanine or followed by a 3' cytosine, the Dam transmethylase would have recognised the 5'-GATC-3' sequence and methylated the adenine to form N6 methyladenine. These BscI sites would not have been cleaved.

The C-mode *B. pertussis* Taberman DNA high molecular weight single band that is not cleaved with MspI but is by HpaII is of interest as it suggests specific CCGG sites for methylase action. The *B. pertussis* strains 134 IV and 364 IV were not digested with EcoRII, but were digested with BstNI suggesting the site Cm5CA/TGG (Table 7.1.) may be occurring due to Dcm methylation of the DNA. The DNA of *B. pertussis* 30042IV was completely digested by EcoRII but there was some inhibition of BstNI digestion. However, the inhibition was not complete and thus all the sites do not appear to be fully methylated. The lack of digestion of Taberman DNA (C-mode) and only partial digestion of *B. parapertussis* 10520 by BstNI and EcoRII could be due to the presence of
Fig. 7.3. EcoRII-digested *Bordetella* chromosomal DNA.

The mol. wt. (kilobase, Gibco-BRL) marker (m) sizes are indicated between the two agarose gels. Lanes contained DNA prepared from the following strains digested with EcoRII (except were indicated): (1 and 17) lambda DNA (undigested); (2 and 18) lambda DNA;
*B. pertussis*: (3) Taberman (undigested); (4) Taberman; (5) Taberman "C-mode"; (6) Tohama; (7) Wellcome 28; (8) Arg 40; (9) Arg 41; (10) L84 I; (11) L84 IV; (12) 134 I; (13) 134 IV; (14) D 30042 I; (15) D 30042 IV; (16) 364 IV; (19) 11615 IV; (20) M2 I; (21) M2 I; *B. parapertussis*: (22) 5952; (23) 10520; *B. bronchiseptica*: (24) A51 I; (25) A51 III; (26) 276 I; (27) 276 III; (28) FW5 I; (29) FW5 III; (31) 452; (30) *B. avium* 4480.
Fig. 7.4. BstNI-digested *Bordetella* chromosomal DNA.

The mol. wt. (kilobase) marker is indicated between the two agarose gels. Lanes contained DNA prepared from the following strains digested with BstNI (except where indicated):

(1 and 17) lambda DNA (undigested); (2 and 18) lambda DNA;

*B. pertussis*: (3) Taberman (undigested); (4) Taberman; (5) Taberman "C-mode"; (6) Tohama; (7) Wellcome 28; (8) Arg 40; (9) Arg 41; (10) L84 I; (11) L84 IV; (12) 134 I; (13) 134 IV; (14) D 30042 I; (15) D 30042 IV; (16) 364 IV; (19) 11615 IV (undigested); (20) 11615 IV; (21) M2 I; (22) M2 I; *B. parapertussis*: (23) 5952; (24) 10520; *B. bronchiseptica*: (25) 452; (26) A51 I; (27) A51 III; (28) 276 I; (29) 276 III; (30) FW5 I; (31) FW5 III; *B. avium*: (32) 4148; (33) 4480.
hm5C·hm5CA/TGG sites (Table 7.1.). The DNA of *B. parapertussis* strain 10520 may not have been fully digested due to some, but not all, of the CCA/TGG sequences being methylated. Possibly the partial methylation involves a subset of CCA/TGG sequences that would correspond to methylation only at CCA/TGG sequences within a particular recognition sequence, such as GCCA/TGGC. This contrasts with the other *B. parapertussis* strain 5952 that does not show methylation. The flagellar homology results in the previous chapter showed the *B. parapertussis* strain 5952 to have a very similar hybridisation profile to *B. bronchiseptica*, but, the *B. parapertussis* strain 10520 differed in having an extra homologous fragment. This was shown after *Cla*I and *Sal*I digestion, and although this may have been due to methylation it may equally have been due to the DNA not being totally purified.

As not all the phase IV *B. pertussis* strains showed evidence of methylation, this suggests a potential for variation between the strains. McGillivray *et al.* (1989) suggested that not all phase variants necessarily arise by spontaneous frame-shift mutations. This was based on the hybridisation of *Bordetella* chromosomal DNA to a probe which contained the *bvg* locus of *B. pertussis*. Hybridisation of EcoRI-digested DNA from virulent and avirulent variants of both *B. pertussis* (including strain L84 I and IV) and *B. bronchiseptica* showed no detectable difference, except for one strain, 11615 IV, where there was a different hybridisation pattern. In this study the DNA of neither *B. pertussis* L84 IV nor 11615 IV was found to be methylated but the DNA of two other phase IV strains not tested by McGillivray *et al.* (1989) showed evidence of methylation. It is possible that phase IV strains arrive at their avirulent state in different ways, by spontaneous frame-shift mutations (Stibitz *et al.*, 1989), by DNA rearrangement (McGillivray *et al.*, 1989) and perhaps by other methods such as methylation. In *E. coli* spontaneous deamination of 5-methylcytosine results in thymine-guanine mismatches, which may generate mutations by C to T transitions (Coulondre *et al.*, 1978).
The results, particularly with the Taberman C-mode and phase IV variants, need to be repeated. It would also be useful to test further C-modulated strains and possibly phase IV strains grown under C-mode conditions to see if they become methylated.
CHAPTER 8

DISCUSSION.
8.1. Analysis of *B. pertussis* DNA fragments proposed as homologous to *Salmonella typhimurium* Hin invertase DNA.

*S. typhimurium* possesses two alternatively expressed flagellins H1 and H2. Expression is determined by a site-specific recombination event which inverts a segment of DNA that lies adjacent to the *H2* flagellin gene (Fig. 1.6.A.). The event requires the presence of an intact *hin* gene (Szekely and Simon, 1983). The cell switches between expression of the two flagellin genes at a significant frequency such that any culture of the strain, although predominately in one phase, will contain some cells in the opposite phase.

8.1.a. Characterisation of a *B. pertussis* DNA fragment previously proposed as homologous to *S. typhimurium* Hin invertase DNA.

Previous results showed the hybridisation of a *S. typhimurium* DNA probe, which included Hin invertase DNA, to a *B. pertussis* cosmid library clone, pl6, and a ∼0.58 kb *ClaI* fragment in *B. pertussis* chromosomal DNA (MacGregor, 1990). In the present study, it was confirmed that the pl6 clone contained a 0.58 kb *ClaI* fragment, and it was also shown that when the fragment was used as a probe, it hybridised to a 0.58 kb *ClaI* fragment in *B. pertussis* chromosomal DNA. The 0.58 kb fragment was subcloned into M13, sequenced and the DNA sequence compared to the EMBL and Genbank DNA database by the DNASTAR programme, Nucscan. No homology to any invertase or related sequence was found. Translating the DNA sequence showed one large open reading frame to exist. This open reading frame was compared to other amino acid sequences in the NBRF protein database using the DNASTAR programme Proscan. No significant homology was found though it was interesting to find small regions of homology to insertion sequence transposases. The largest open reading frame consisted of 191 amino acids of which 139 showed some homology to a transposase. The highest region of homology was 29.4% identity in 34 amino acids (Fig. 3.10). The homologous regions appear to be too small to
be of significance but the function of this sequence could be assessed by subcloning the complete open reading frame in an expression vector and examining the protein product for transposase activity. The *Bordetella* DNA fragment thus had limited homology to *S. typhimurium* DNA in the *Hin* invertase DNA region, although presumably enough to enable the original hybridisation of the 680 bp *S. typhimurium* DNA probe to *Clal*-digested *Bordetella* DNA. The reverse hybridisation i.e. with the 0.58 kb fragment of *B. pertussis* DNA as a probe to the *S. typhimurium* DNA however was not successful although the hybridisation conditions of both MacGregor (1990) and Foxall (1990) were used. When the photograph of the dot-blot analysis of the cosmid library probed with the 680 bp fragment by MacGregor (1990) was re-examined, several clones were shown to be hybridising to various degrees. Thus, the conditions used in the original work do not appear to have been stringent enough to be certain that p16 was the most specific clone. The exact hybridisation procedure used by MacGregor (1990) with the *S. typhimurium* *Hin* invertase DNA fragment probe against chromosomal DNA was therefore repeated.

The plasmid pKK1001B, which includes the *S. typhimurium* *hin* DNA and adjacent DNA, was digested with *BclI* and *Stul* to produce the probe. The probe, a 680 bp fragment, consisted of the *hin* DNA (minus 47 bp from the N-terminus of the gene), and additional adjacent downstream sequences. This probe originally thought not to include flagellin sequences, hybridised to a ~0.58 kb fragment in *B. pertussis* chromosomal DNA confirming the result of MacGregor (1990). However, in this study the hybridisation was weak and there was much stronger hybridisation to a ~0.96 kb fragment. The absence of hybridisation to this larger fragment in MacGregor’s work could have been due to differences in the production of the probe or in the conditions of the Southern transfer.

The specificity of the *S. typhimurium* *Hin* invertase DNA probe was examined. The *hin* DNA is unusual in that when the host, *S. typhimurium*, switches between flagellin types both orientations of the *hin* gene will occur. This
will be apparent in the digestion pattern of the DNA prepared from the culture. The *hin* gene is adjacent to the *H2* flagellin promoter, the inverted repeat right, and then the *H2* flagellin gene (Fig. 3.2). Only the N terminal first 114 bp of the *H2* flagellin gene were known (Silverman *et al.*, 1981) and there is a high degree of homology to the fully sequenced *H1* flagellin gene (Joys, 1985, Fig. 6.1.). It was therefore hypothesised that the *BscI* site present in the *H1* flagellin gene would also be present in the *H2* flagellin gene sequence. A recent report (Okazaki *et al.*, 1993) has shown this to be the case. Digestion of pKK1001B with *BscI* and *StuI* would thus produce two similar-sized fragments of ~680 bp which would co-migrate on electrophoresis. One (*BscI-StuI*) fragment (of 678 bp) would consist of 526 bp of the already recognised Hin invertase DNA region. The other would be the adjacent sequence, a *StuI-BscI* fragment, of 689 bp including the *H2* gene promoter, right inverted repeat and N-terminus of the *H2* structural gene. The probe made from the ~680 bp region would thus consist of all these components and potentially give rise to confusing hybridisation results.

On digestion of the pKK1001B plasmid with *BscI* and *StuI* a further fragment of 620 bp is produced in addition to the 680 bp. This fragment was also used in this study as a probe against chromosomal *Bordetella* DNA digested with *ClaI*. Interestingly, the 620 bp probe also hybridised to the same *Bordetella* fragments i.e. 0.96 kb and 0.58 kb as did the "680 bp" fragment probe although great care had been taken to ensure they were not cross-contaminated. The occurrence of the ~620 bp fragment would be explained by the presence of a *BscI* site in the *H2* flagellin gene and the fact that, on inversion of the *hin* gene, the *BscI* site from the *hin* DNA would then be closest to the *H2* flagellin gene resulting in a *BscI-BscI* fragment of 617 bp. Thus the ~620 bp fragment would contain 47 bp of the *hin* gene, the right inverted repeat and 479 bp of the *H2* flagellin gene (Fig. 3.2). In addition, the "680 bp" fragment consisting of two fragments of very similar size, would explain its greater intensity as compared to the 620 bp fragment on ethidium bromide-stained gels.
Analysis of the *S. typhimurium* hin sequence and the surrounding sequences allowed calculations of fragment sizes assuming a *BscI* site in the *H2* flagellin gene sequence at the same position as in the *H1* gene sequence. Restriction enzyme digestion would thus produce fragments of ~680 bp and ~620 bp, each containing similar DNA regions, giving the same hybridisation pattern to occur with both the 680 and 620 bp probes as was shown in this study. The 680 bp probe would consist not only of the Hin invertase DNA but also the *H2* promoter, inverted repeat right and 479 bp of the *H2* flagellin gene. As the 620 bp probe would not contain the *H2* promoter, the hybridisation must be due to the DNA invertase sequences, right inverted repeat and or flagellin region (N-terminus). More precisely-defined probes were produced to determine to which *S. typhimurium* DNA sequences the *Bordetella* DNA was homologous.

8.1.b. Identification of *Bordetella* DNA fragments hybridising to DNA invertase target sequences.

DNA invertases act on inverted repeat sequences. After examination of published invertase target sequences, six mixed oligonucleotides were designed varying in size from 15 bp to 26 bp. As probes, they hybridised to several fragments in *Clal*-digested *Bordetella* DNA. Non-specific binding may have been due to the GC codon usage being over-emphasised or the number of possible combinations of oligonucleotide sequences which were present, which can result in the hybridisation temperature not being stringent enough for all the probe sequences present. Fewer chromosomal fragments hybridised to probes which emphasised the *S. typhimurium* and *E. coli* target sequences than did those emphasising *M. bovis* sequences. It has been suggested that, whereas IS-like elements probably exist as integral entities in just a few locations within the genome, the inverted repeat sequences are present as multiple copies (Alsheikly and Lofdahl, 1989). The pattern of hybridisation was not the same as that of the
680 bp fragment probe and thus the 680 bp homology was presumably not due to inverted repeat homology in the \textit{Bordetella} DNA.

\subsection*{8.1.c. Characterisation of a \textit{B. pertussis} DNA fragment hybridising to the \textit{hin} gene probe.}

The \textit{hin} gene was amplified by PCR from \textit{S. typhimurium} DNA in pKK1001B. It was then used as a probe against \textit{B. pertussis} \textit{ClaI}-digested chromosomal DNA and this resulted in hybridisation to a \(~1.1\) kb fragment. Although this was a similar sized fragment to the one which hybridised to the \"0.68 kb\" fragment, \(~0.96\) kb, the hybridisation to the \(~1.1\) kb was not as strong. Digestion of the \textit{Bordetella} DNA with a different enzyme, \textit{SalI} confirmed that the probes were hybridising to different fragments as the 680 bp fragment hybridised to a 1.6 kb \textit{SalI} fragment whereas the PCR amplified \textit{hin} gene probe hybridised again to a \(~1.1\) kb \textit{SalI} fragment. The hybridisation of the 680 bp fragment probe thus could not have been due to homology to an invertase or inverted repeat and may therefore have been due to homology to the flagellin sequence.

The hybridisation of \textit{hin} gene to \(~1.1\) kb \textit{ClaI} and \textit{SalI} fragments in \textit{B. pertussis} DNA suggested that it had homology to the 1.05 kb tandem repeats described by Glare \textit{et al.}, (1990). Sequence comparison of the \textit{hin} gene and the tandem repeat showed two small regions of high homology with 75\% identity over 20 bases. One of these regions, a 17 bp sequence, was used to design a probe and it was shown to hybridise to the \textit{Bordetella} DNA. In addition, the \textit{hin} gene probe was also shown to hybridise to the other \textit{Bordetella} species. A \textit{ClaI} fragment in the DNA of the \textit{B. avium} strain, the same size as that in \textit{B. pertussis} hybridised to the probe, but, there was no evidence of tandem repeats in the \textit{B. avium} strains studied, either on examination of ethidium bromide stained gels, or from the results of McPheat and McNally (1987a). The probe hybridised to large \textit{ClaI} fragments of \(>10\) kb in DNA from \textit{B. bronchiseptica} and \textit{B.}
parapertussis strains. The B. pertussis 1.05 kb tandemly repeated sequence has been identified by Glare et al. (1990) as showing considerable homology to a repeat sequence transposon-like insertion element, IS481 (McLafferty et al., 1988). Glare et al. (1990) showed homology of the 1.05 kb repeat sequence probe to a single copy sequence in B. bronchiseptica and although the IS481 repeats have not been found in the other Bordetella species (McLafferty et al., 1988; McPheat and McNally, 1987a,b), single copy sequences have been shown to have homology to the closely related sequences of IS481, IS481v1 and IS481v2 in B. parapertussis and B. bronchiseptica (McPheat et al., 1987a). McPheat et al., 1987a showed homology to two B. bronchiseptica fragments, although hybridisation to the 10.1 kb BamH1 fragment was faint. It is possible that the homology to the DNA from Bordetella strains other than B. pertussis shown in this study was due to the presence of single insertion sequences (ISs). Other ISs have been found in B. parapertussis, B. bronchiseptica (Zee et al., 1993) and B. avium (Savelkoul et al., 1993). The location of ISs is also intriguing, as variations of IS481 have been shown to occur close to B. pertussis virulence genes. One is located upstream of the adenylate cyclase locus another is located immediately adjacent to the C-terminal end of the agglutinogen 2 fimbrial subunit gene (McPheat et al., 1989b) and one is close to the porin gene (Li et al., 1991b).

The results in this study suggested that the hin gene probe was not hybridising to a homologous invertase DNA sequence in B. pertussis but rather to an insertion sequence. Hybridisation of the S. typhimurium hin DNA probe had also been found to the ~0.58 kb B. pertussis fragment which was shown here to have low sequence homology to insertion sequence/transposon transposases. Examination of the amino acid sequence between the hin gene and H2 flagellin sequence open reading frames showed other reading frames in the same translation frame. Homology of the largest of these ORFs also showed limited homology to transposases, although as with the 0.58 kb sequence the areas are small the highest homology e.g. 29.2% identity in a 48 amino acid overlap. The
hypothesis outlined above would allow for this \textit{S. typhimurium} region to have been included in the 680 bp and 620 bp probes, giving rise to the homology shown to the 0.58 kb fragment.

Although the invertases are noted for their amino-acid sequence homology to resolvases, there is also a potential homology to transposases, as invertases perhaps have a common evolutionary origin with transposons, some of which have transposase and resolvase activity (Stern and Kamp, 1989). Thus, in this study, homology has been shown between a GC-rich region of the \textit{hin} gene and an insertion sequence and \textit{S. typhimurium} and \textit{B. pertussis} having potential coding areas for transposases or at least in their previous history. The similarity does not need to be extensive, merely sufficient to enable hybridisation. Other homology between the \textit{S. typhimurium} DNA probe and the \textit{Bordetella} DNA appeared to have been due to flagellin sequences, as described below.

\textbf{8.2. Analysis of \textit{Bordetella} DNA for homology to flagellin gene sequences.}

The \textit{H1} flagellin gene was amplified by PCR from \textit{S. typhimurium} chromosomal DNA and used as a probe against \textit{B. pertussis} chromosomal DNA. This probe hybridised to the same sized \textit{Clai} and \textit{SalI} fragments of \textit{B. pertussis} DNA as did the pKK1001B "680 bp" fragment probe. Therefore, the hybridisation noted with the 680 bp probe could possibly have been due to flagellin sequences. Although the original impetus for the flagellin work was to corroborate this hypothesis, the results have provided other useful information on homology to flagellin sequences in all species of \textit{Bordetella}.

Two flagellin DNA probes were used: the whole \textit{S. typhimurium H1} flagellin gene and the 15 bp oligonucleotide derived from the conserved N-terminal sequences of various flagellins. Both showed homology to DNA from all four species of \textit{Bordetella} despite only two of them being motile. This indicates the presence of non-expressed flagellin genes in the two non-motile species (\textit{B. pertussis} and \textit{B. parapertussis}). Other workers, (Akerley \textit{et al.}, 1992),
mentioned that *B. pertussis* chromosomal DNA contained sequences which hybridised to degenerate oligonucleotide probes based on the amino acid sequences of *B. bronchiseptica* flagellin. The work reported here and elsewhere (Leigh *et al.*, 1993) supports that observation and extended the investigation to non-motile *B. parapertussis* strains and motile *B. avium* strains by showing that they too possessed homology with the *S. typhimurium* flagellin gene sequences. These conclusions are supported by the most recent report from Akerley *et al.* (1993).

The flagellin gene, named *flaA*, from *B. bronchiseptica* and its upstream region has now been sequenced (Akerley *et al.*, 1993). The predicted flagellin protein sequence has a high degree of amino acid identity with the FliC proteins of *S. typhimurium* and *E. coli* especially at the amino and carboxy termini. The amino acid sequence similarity between the flagellins of *B. bronchiseptica* and *S. typhimurium* is unexpectedly greater than the similarity between *E. coli* and *S. typhimurium* FliC proteins, hence explaining the high level of hybridisation using the *H1 (fliC)* flagellin DNA probe in this study. The homology of the *Bordetella* protein with those of *E. coli* and *S. typhimurium* is not unusual in that the amino-terminal sequences of the fimbrial AGG subunits have been shown to share 50% homology with that of *E. coli* K99 fimbrial subunits (Mooi *et al.*, 1987). The extensive conservation of flagellin sequences at the amino and carboxy termini has been noted for a variety of genera (Joys, 1988) and it has been suggested that these domains are essential for filament formation (Kuwajima, 1988).

The regulatory hierarchy in *E. coli* and *S. typhimurium* acts to ensure that the highly-expressed filament structural protein, flagellin, is synthesised only after a prerequisite set of other structural proteins has been expressed and properly assembled. The hybridisation work in this study and the sequence similarity with *S. typhimurium* and *E. coli* sequences suggests that additional features for the production of the flagellin may be conserved in the bordetellae.
Sequencing upstream of the flagellin gene flaA in B. bronchiseptica has detected a locus named frl. The frl locus efficiently complemented mutations in the flhDC loci of E. coli. The flhD and flhC genes of E. coli are early genes of the flagellar hierarchy that encode products required for transcription of middle and late genes. The flaA transcriptional start site in B. bronchiseptica maps to a consensus recognition sequence for an alternative sigma factor. This could suggest that transcription from the flaA promoter requires one or more products of the frl locus and the product of the fliA gene. The fliA gene in S. typhimurium encodes the alternative sigma factor. It is a middle gene which is required for transcription of late gene promoters, including the promoter for flagellin (HI, fliC). The transcription of early genes is important in S. typhimurium, since if an early gene did not function it would result in late genes not being expressed and so there would be no filament formation. Analysis of flaA mRNA production by Northern (RNA) blotting and primer extension indicated that negative regulation of flagellin expression in B. bronchiseptica by BvgAS occurs at the level of transcription. Thus the Bordetella virulence control system would appear to mediate transcriptional control of flaA through a regulatory hierarchy that includes the frl locus and an alternative sigma factor (Akerley et al., 1993). Many bacteria appear to utilise an alternative sigma factor to direct transcription of flagellin and expression of motility-associated loci (Arnosti and Chamberlain, 1989). Interestingly, as a further control in E.coli, there is an anti-sigma factor flgM which binds to the alternative sigma factor and disturbs its ability to form a complex with RNA polymerase core enzyme. This novel type of negative regulator could possibly be present in Bordetella species.

The functional role of motility during respiratory infection by B. bronchiseptica requires examination. B. bronchiseptica growing at 25°C would have low concentrations of BvgA present and the vir-repressed genes (vrg) including flagellin expression would be active. On transmission to a susceptible host the flagella could provide a means of moving through the mucosal blanket.
in the nose and trachea. As the temperature surrounding the *Bordetella* increased, active BvgS would increase, activating BvgA the transcriptional activator, and turning off the *vrg* genes including the flagellin genes. The *vir*-activated genes would now be expressed allowing attachment and production of toxins. The flagellin genes would not be needed again until the bacteria encountered a new host. Although *B. pertussis* does not produce flagella, the production of flagella by *B. avium* and *B. bronchiseptica* in the avirulent or C-mode state could be important in a pathologically-dormant form associated with the later stages of infection and in carriers. In this situation they could serve as a reservoir of bacteria until the phase switched back to the virulent stage and the bacteria become able to initiate new infections in susceptible hosts (Weiss and Falkow, 1984).

### 8.3. Examination of the methylation state of *Bordetella* DNA.

The final results chapter deals with the analysis of the methylation state of the *Bordetella* DNA to determine if methylation does occur as reported by Goldman *et al.* (1987) and if there was any variance between phase (Leslie and Gardner, 1931) or antigenic mode (Lacey, 1960).

No Dam methylation was found in the *Bordetella* DNA. Results obtained with *B. pertussis* strains 134 IV and 364 IV showed that some Dcm methylation may be occurring, possibly at the site C\(^{\text{m5}}\)CA/TGG. For *B. pertussis* D30042IV, not all the sites appeared to be fully methylated. In DNA from *B. pertussis* Taberman (C-mode) and *B. parapertussis* 10520 the absence of digestion could have been due to \(^{\text{hm5}}\text{C}^{\text{hm5}}\text{CA/TGG sites. DNA from the *B. parapertussis* strain 10520 may not have been digested to completion due to some, but not all, of the CCA/TGG sequences being methylated. In contrast, DNA from the other *B. parapertussis* strain, 5952, did not show methylation.

The results, particularly with the Taberman C-mode and phase IV variants, need to be repeated. It would also be useful to test further C-modulated
strains and possibly phase IV strains grown under C-mode conditions to see if they become methylated. Dcm methylation was found only in bacteria closely related to *E. coli* e.g. *Salmonella* by Gomez-Eichelmann et al. (1991). Since sequence homology has been found between these strains and *Bordetella* it is possible that the Dcm methylation is also present in *Bordetella*, as is suggested in this preliminary study.

Not all phase IV *B. pertussis* strains showed evidence of methylation which suggests a potential for variation between the strains. It is probable that phase IV strains arrive at their avirulent state in different ways, such as by spontaneous frame-shift mutations (Stibitz et al., 1989) or by DNA rearrangement (McGillivray et al., 1989) and also perhaps by mechanisms involving methylation. Dcm methylation can be mutagenic: in *E. coli*, spontaneous deamination of 5-methylcytosine results in thymine-guanine mismatches, which may generate mutations by C to T transitions (Coulondre et al., 1978). Methylation may also be important as it can modulate the activity of prokaryotic transposable elements (Roberts et al., 1985).

8.4. Conclusions.

Two potential problems about hybridisation that this work has highlighted are firstly the dangers of using ill-defined probes to seek homologous gene sequences in other species. Secondly the fact that hybridisation can be obtained with only a small portion of a probe which may result in positive hybridisation to sequences that, overall, do not bear close homology to the probe. These problems were resolved by the use of PCR-amplified gene probes enabling hybridisations to be more specific aiding easier interpretation of the results. It was hypothesised that the sequences which hybridised though having small sequence homology could have some evolutionary significance.

In this study, evidence has been given to show homology between an invertase and the *B. pertussis* IS repeat sequence. The exact function of insertion
sequences (ISs) are unknown although they appear to have been important in evolution by mediating chromosomal rearrangements such as deletions, inversions and duplications and by altering the expression of adjacent genes (Iida et al., 1983). There is a high degree of conservation of B. pertussis fragments bearing the repetitive sequence which implies that the repeat (IS481) is not involved in DNA rearrangements (Glare et al., 1990). The loss of expression of adenylate cyclase and agglutinogen 2 in B. pertussis strains was shown not to be the result of DNA rearrangements at the sites of IS481v1 or IS481v2 (McPheat et al., 1989a). However, chromosomal DNA rearrangement at another uncharacterized locus between phase variants of a B. pertussis strain had been observed (McPheat and McNally, 1987b). This may indicate that different members of the IS family differ with regard to their ability to cause DNA rearrangements.

The presence of the Bordetella IS may act as markers for the original primordial acquisition of virulence factors, including the flagellin genes, through movement of the transposable elements. Insertion sequences have been shown 3 kb upstream of the adenylate cyclase gene and adjacent to the 3' end of the gene for Agglutinogen 2 (McPheat et al., 1989b), although their close association to flagellin sequences has not yet been shown. The origin of the Bordetella flagellin genes and invertase-like or insertion sequences may be examined in the light of suggestions regarding the evolution of S. typhimurium flagellar phase variation (Section 1.9.1.a, Silverman and Simon, 1983). The fact that there is homology between various flagellar genes suggests that these particular functions were so essential to primordial bacterial growth that they were established early in evolution (Arnosti and Chamberlain, 1989). The structure of the invertible region of S. typhimurium is reminiscent of the structure of IS elements in that it is flanked by 14 bp inverted repeats. In this study, hybridisation homology was shown between Bordetella DNA and the S. typhimurium hin gene, the H1 flagellin gene and possibly the region between them (Section 8.1). In addition,
McPheat et al. (1988) described a 40 bp sequence internal to the IS in *B. pertussis* which shows some homology to the recognition sequence, the inverted repeat, of the Hin invertase DNA. This could also be an additional explanation of why the inverted repeat sequence oligonucleotide probes gave so many fragments of homology, due to hybridisation to the repeats in the *B. pertussis* genome.

Non-expressed flagellin genes have been shown, in this study, to almost certainly occur in *B. pertussis* and *B. parapertussis* strains. The presence of non-expressed genes has been shown previously in the *Bordetella* genus. *B. bronchiseptica* and *B. parapertussis* possess the *ptx* locus but these genes are not expressed in these species due to the accumulation of deleterious base changes, mainly in the promoter region, of the *ptx* operon. *B. avium* does not contain sequences related to the *ptx* genes (Arico and Rappuoli, 1987; Nicosia and Rappuoli, 1987). The presence or lack of genes and their expression has enabled suggestions as to the ancestry of the strains. The results reported here indicate that the ancestral *Bordetella* strain was flagellate without *ptx* or *cya* genes. *B. avium* having neither *ptx* or *cya* genes, is considered to be the most distantly related member of the genus. After acquisition of the *ptx* and *cya* genes, further derivatives arose to become *B. bronchiseptica* and, with a loss in mobility, *B. parapertussis* and *B. pertussis* were derived. *B. bronchiseptica* and *B. parapertussis* having lost the ability to express the *ptx* genes. These processes were presumably determined by niche-specialisation where environmental selection pressure dictated the retention or loss of motility and *ptx* gene expression. Thus, although all four *Bordetella* are well adapted respiratory tract pathogens, they have presumably evolved alternative strategies for survival and persistence both in the environment and in different vertebrate hosts.
REFERENCES.


Komeda, Y. (1982). Fusions of flagellar operons to lactose genes on a Mu lac


Hygiene 58:57-93.

Lautrop, H. (1971). Epidemics of parapertussis: 20 years observations in

Lax, A.J. (1985). Is phase variation in Bordetella caused by mutation and

Bordetella bronchiseptica and Bordetella parapertussis carrying
recombinant plasmids. Infection and Immunity 57:1413-1418.

dNA from both flagellate and non-flagellate Bordetella species contain
sequences homologous to the Salmonella H1 flagellin gene. FEMS

Leininger, E., Roberts, M., Kenimer, J.G., Charles, I.G., Fairweather, N.,
arg-gly-asp-containing Bordetella pertussis surface protein that promotes
adherence of mammalian cells. Proceedings of the National Academy of
Sciences USA 88:345-349.

Journal of Hygiene 31:423-434.

Agglutinating monoclonal antibodies that specifically recognise
lipooligosaccharide A of Bordetella pertussis. Infection and Immunity
56:699-702.

outer-membrane protein from Bordetella parapertussis: Cloning,
nucleotide sequence and surface expression in Escherichia coli. Molecular
Microbiology 5:409-417.

Li, Z.M., Hannah, J.H., Stibitz, S., Nguyen, N.Y., Manclark, C.R. and Brennan,
protein of Bordetella pertussis. Molecular Microbiology 5:1649-1656.


